



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**1 Peter**

**Version 64**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2022-08-03

**Version:** 64

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2022-06-28

**Version:** 37

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2022-06-28

**Version:** 36

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2022-07-11

**Version:** 2.1.27

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2022-07-11

**Version:** 0.27

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2022-06-28

**Version:** 29

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2022-06-28

**Version:** 32

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links**

**Date:** 2022-08-03

**Version:** 16

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](https://unfoldingword.org/utn)”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](https://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>10</b>
1 Peter	10
Introduction to 1 Peter	11
1 Peter 1	13
1 Peter 2	84
1 Peter 3	152
1 Peter 4	218
1 Peter 5	263
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>302</b>
Abstract Nouns	303
Active or Passive	305
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	308
Blessings	311
Collective Nouns	313
Connect — Contrast Relationship	316
Connect — Factual Conditions	318
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship	320
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship	323
Connect — Sequential Time Relationship	325
Connecting Words and Phrases	327
Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding	331
Double Negatives	334
Doublet	337
Ellipsis	339
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	342
First, Second or Third Person	344
Forms of You	346
Generic Noun Phrases	347
How to Translate Names	349
Idiom	353
Imperatives — Other Uses	355
Information Structure	358
Litotes	360
Merism	362
Metaphor	364
Metonymy	370
Parallelism	372
Personification	375
Possession	377
Pronouns — When to Use Them	381
Quotations and Quote Margins	383
Quote Markings	385
Reflexive Pronouns	388
Rhetorical Question	391
Simile	394
Statements — Other Uses	397
Symbolic Action	399
Symbolic Language	401

Synecdoche .....	403
Textual Variants .....	405
Translate Unknowns .....	407
Translating Son and Father .....	410
When Masculine Words Include Women .....	412
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words .....</b>	<b>414</b>
Abraham, Abram .....	415
adversary, enemy .....	416
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ... ..	417
amen, truly .....	418
angel, archangel .....	419
apostle, apostleship .....	421
appoint, appointed .....	422
ark .....	423
Asia .....	424
astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray .....	425
authority .....	426
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian .....	427
baptize, baptized, baptism .....	428
bear, bearer, carry .....	430
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief .....	431
beloved .....	434
blemish, unblemished, defect .....	435
bless, blessed, blessing .....	436
blood .....	438
body .....	440
born again, born of God, new birth .....	441
brother .....	442
call, call out .....	443
children, child, offspring .....	445
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect .....	447
Christ, Messiah .....	448
Christian .....	450
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments .....	451
commit, committed, commitment .....	452
compassion, compassionate .....	453
confirm, confirmation, legal .....	454
conscience .....	455
cornerstone .....	456
create, created, creation, creator .....	457
crown, crowned .....	458
cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy .....	459
darkness .....	461
day .....	462
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh .....	463
deceive, lie, deception, illusions .....	464
devour .....	465
die, dead, deadly, death .....	466
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious .....	468
disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed .....	469
drunk, drunkard .....	470
elder, older, old .....	471

endure, endurance .....	472
envy, covet .....	473
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever .....	474
evil, wicked, unpleasant .....	476
evildoer, evildoing .....	478
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins .....	479
exalt, exalted, exaltation .....	480
exhort, exhortation .....	481
exile, exiled .....	482
exult, exultant .....	483
face, facial .....	484
faith .....	486
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy .....	487
faithless, unfaithful, unfaithfulness .....	489
fear, afraid, frighten .....	490
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot .....	491
flesh .....	492
flock, herd .....	493
fool, foolish, folly .....	494
foreknew, foreknowledge .....	495
found, founder, foundation .....	496
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty .....	497
Galatia, Galatians .....	498
Gentile .....	499
gift .....	500
glory, glorious, glorify .....	501
God .....	503
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father .....	505
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry .....	507
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness .....	509
gold, golden .....	511
good news, gospel .....	512
good, right, pleasant, better, best .....	514
govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha .....	516
grace, gracious .....	517
hand .....	518
head .....	520
heart .....	521
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly .....	522
heir .....	524
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit .....	525
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred .....	527
honor .....	529
hope, hoped .....	530
house, household .....	531
household .....	532
humble, humbled, humility .....	533
hypocrite, hypocrisy .....	534
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him .....	535
inherit, inheritance, heir .....	536
it is written .....	538
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus .....	539

John Mark .....	541
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad .....	542
judge, judgment .....	544
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification .....	546
king, kingship .....	548
kiss .....	549
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish .....	550
lamb, Lamb of God .....	552
last day, latter days .....	554
life, live, living, alive .....	555
light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten .....	557
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if .....	558
lion, lioness .....	559
loins, waist .....	560
lord, Lord, master, sir .....	561
love, beloved .....	563
lust, lustful, passions, desires .....	565
manager, steward, stewardship .....	566
mercy, merciful .....	567
might, mighty, mighty works .....	569
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded .....	570
multiply, multiplied, multiplication .....	571
name .....	572
nation .....	573
Noah .....	575
obey, keep .....	576
oversee, overseer, keeper .....	577
patient, patience, impatient .....	578
peace, peaceful, peacemakers .....	579
people of God .....	580
people, people group .....	581
perfect, complete .....	583
perish .....	584
perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, ... ..	585
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas .....	586
Pontus .....	587
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess .....	588
power, powerful, powerfully .....	589
praise, praised, praiseworthy .....	591
pray, prayer .....	592
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation .....	593
precious, valuable, expensive, fine .....	595
priest, priesthood .....	596
prison, prisoner, imprison .....	598
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess .....	599
proud, pride, prideful .....	601
pure, purify, purification .....	603
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up, .....	604
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance .....	606
redeem, redeemer, redemption .....	608
reject, rejected, rejection .....	609
resurrection .....	610

reveal, revealed, revelation .....	611
revere, revered, reverence, reverent .....	612
right hand .....	613
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ... ..	615
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering .....	617
sanctify, sanctification .....	619
Sarah, Sarai .....	620
Satan, devil, evil one .....	621
save, saved, safe, salvation .....	623
seed, semen .....	625
seek, search, look for .....	626
send, sent, send out .....	627
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women .....	628
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach .....	630
shepherd, herder, pastor .....	632
silver .....	634
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning .....	635
slander, slanderers, revile, insult .....	637
soldier, warrior .....	638
son .....	639
soul, self, person .....	641
spirit, wind, breath .....	642
strength, strengthen, strong .....	644
stumble, reeling .....	646
stumbling block, stone of stumbling .....	647
subject, be subject to, subjection .....	648
submit, submission, in submission .....	649
suffer, suffering .....	650
terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic .....	652
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire .....	653
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence .....	654
thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits .....	656
time, untimely, date .....	657
to minister, ministry .....	658
tongue, language .....	659
torment, tormented, tormentors .....	660
trial, proving .....	661
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity .....	662
true, truth .....	663
turn, turn away, turn back, return .....	665
understand, understanding, thinking .....	667
vain, vanity .....	668
walk, walked .....	669
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware .....	670
water, deep .....	671
will of God .....	672
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ... ..	673
work, works, deeds .....	675
world, worldly .....	676
zeal, zealous .....	677
Zion, Mount Zion .....	678



<b>Contributors</b>	<b>679</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	679
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	685
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	686
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	687
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	687
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors	688



## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

### **1 Peter**

## Introduction to 1 Peter

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of 1 Peter

Introduction (1:1–2)

Peter reminds the believers of their identity in Christ (1:3–2:10)

- Praise to God for saving the believers (1:3–12)
- Command to be holy (1:13–21)
- Command to love each other as a family (1:22–2:10)

Peter tells the believers how they should behave (2:11–4:11)

- How believers should act toward other people (2:11–3:12)
- How believers should endure suffering (3:13–4:6)
- How believers should act because the end is near (4:7–11)

Peter encourages the believers to persevere when suffering (4:12–5:11)

- How believers should respond to trials (4:12–19)
- How believers should interact with one another (5:1–11)

Conclusion (5:12–14)

#### Who wrote the book of 1 Peter?

The author identified himself as Peter, who was also called Simon Peter. He was an apostle, and he also wrote the book of 2 Peter. Peter probably wrote this letter in Rome. He wrote the letter to Gentile Christians scattered throughout Asia Minor. (See: [Peter](#), [Simon Peter](#), [Cephas](#))

#### What is the book of 1 Peter about?

Peter wrote this letter to encourage Gentile Christians who were being persecuted and to exhort them to stand firm in “the true grace of God” ([5:12](#)). Peter told his readers how they should act in the midst of a society that hated them. He encouraged Christians to continue obeying God even when they were suffering. He told them to do this because Jesus would return soon. Peter also instructed Christians about submitting to people in authority over them.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title “1 Peter” or “First Peter,” or they may choose a clearer title, such as “The First Letter from Peter” or “The First Letter Peter Wrote.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

#### How were Christians treated in Rome?

Peter was probably in Rome when he wrote this letter. In [5:13](#) Peter referred to Rome symbolically as “Babylon.” It appears that when Peter wrote this letter, Romans were severely persecuting Christians.

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### Singular and plural “you”

In this book, the word “I” refers to Peter, except in two places: [1:16](#) and [2:6](#). The word “you” is always plural and refers to Peter’s audience. Sometimes it refers to a specific group of people within Peter’s audience, such as wives, husbands, church leaders, or other groups. These groups are indicated in the notes. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### What are the major issues in the text of the book of 1 Peter?

“Having purified your souls by obedience to the truth for sincere brotherly love, love one another earnestly from a pure heart” ([1:22](#)). The ULT, UST, and most other modern versions read this way. Some older versions read, “Having purified your souls by obedience to the truth *through the Spirit* for sincere brotherly love, love one another earnestly from the heart.” Translators are advised to follow the modern reading.

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

# 1 Peter 1

## 1 Peter 1 General Notes

### Structure and Formatting

Introduction (1:1–2)

Praise to God for saving the believers (1:3–12)

Command to be holy (1:13–21)

Command to love each other as a family (1:22–2:10)

Peter begins this letter in [1:1–2](#) by giving his name, identifying the people to whom he is writing, and offering a greeting. That was the way people typically began letters at that time.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in [1:24–25](#).

### Special Concepts in this Chapter

#### What God reveals

When Jesus comes again, everyone will see how good God's people were because they had faith in Jesus. Then God's people will see how gracious God has been to them, and all people will praise both God and his people.

#### Holiness

God wants his people to be holy because God is holy ([1:15](#)). (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

#### Eternity

Peter tells Christians to live for things that will last forever and not to live for the things of this world, which will end. (See: [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#))

### Other Possible Translation Difficulties in this Chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Peter writes that his readers are glad and sad at the same time ([1:6](#)). He can say this because they are sad because they are suffering, but they are also glad because they know that God will save them “in the last time” ([1:5](#))



## 1 Peter 1:1

## Peter (ULT)

### I am} Peter (UST)

In this culture, letter writers would give their own names first, and they would refer to themselves in the third person. If that would be confusing in your language, you could use the first person. If your language has a particular way of introducing the author of a letter, you could also use that. Alternate translation: "I, Peter, am writing this letter" or "From Peter" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

## Peter (ULT)

### I am} Peter (UST)

**Peter** is the name of a man, a disciple of Jesus. See the information about him in Part 1 of the Introduction to 1 Peter. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## an apostle of Jesus Christ (ULT)

### whom Jesus the Messiah sent {to represent him (UST)

This phrase gives further information about Simon Peter. He describes himself as being someone given the position and authority of being Christ's apostle. (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

## to the elect exiles (ULT)

### I am writing this letter} to you whom God has chosen to belong to himself. {I am writing to you} who are temporarily living in...far away {from your true home in heaven (UST)

In this culture, after giving their own names, letter writers would then state to whom they were writing, naming those people in the third person. If that would be confusing in your language, you could use the second person. Alternate translation: "to you elect exiles" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

## to the elect exiles of the dispersion (ULT)

### I am writing this letter} to you whom God has chosen to belong to himself. {I am writing to you} who are temporarily living in...far away {from your true home in heaven (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **elect** and **dispersion**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: "to those whom God has elected and exiled among those whom God has dispersed" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> Peter, an apostle of Jesus Christ, to the elect exiles of the dispersion of Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia,

## UST

<sup>1</sup> {I am} Peter, whom Jesus the Messiah sent {to represent him}. {I am writing this letter} to you whom God has chosen to belong to himself. {I am writing to you} who are temporarily living in the provinces of Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia, far away {from your true home in heaven}.



## to the elect exiles of the dispersion (ULT)

**I am writing this letter} to you whom God has chosen to belong to himself. {I am writing to you} who are temporarily living in...far away {from your true home in heaven (UST)**

When Peter calls his readers **exiles**, he could mean: (1) they are **exiles** because they are far away from their true home in heaven. Alternate translation: “to the elect exiles of the dispersion who are far from their home in heaven” (2) they are **exiles** because they were forced to leave their homes and go far away to Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia. Alternate translation: “to you elect exiles of the dispersion who are far away from your homes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## of the dispersion (ULT)

**I am writing to you} who are temporarily living in...far away...from your true home in heaven (UST)**

Here, **dispersion** could refer to: (1) groups of Gentile Christians who were spread throughout the world instead of in their true home in heaven. In this case, **dispersion** would have a similar meaning to **exiles** and would add emphasis. Alternate translation: “among those dispersed outside of their true home in heaven” (2) the groups of Jewish people who were spread across the Greek-speaking world that was outside of the land of Israel, which is the common technical meaning for this word. Alternate translation: “among the dispersed Jews” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## of Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia (ULT)

**the provinces of Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia (UST)**

**Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia** are names of Roman provinces that were located in what is now the country of Turkey. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [an apostle](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [of Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [to the...exiles](#)
- [elect](#)
- [of the dispersion](#)
- [of Pontus](#)
- [Galatia](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [I am} Peter](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [whom...sent {to represent him](#)
- [I am writing this letter} to you whom God has chosen to belong to himself](#)
- [I am writing to you} who are temporarily living in...far away...from your true home in heaven](#)
- [I am writing to you} who are temporarily living in...far away {from your true home in heaven](#)
- [the provinces of Pontus](#)

- Galatia
- Asia



## 1 Peter 1:2

## the foreknowledge of God the Father (ULT) God our Father...what he had already decided (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **foreknowledge**, you could express the same idea with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "what God the Father foreknew" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## the foreknowledge of God the Father (ULT) God our Father...what he had already decided (UST)

This phrase could mean: (1) God had determined what would happen ahead of time. Alternate translation: "what God the Father planned previously" (2) God knew what would happen ahead of time. Alternate translation: "what God the Father knew beforehand" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## the Father (ULT) our Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

## by the sanctification of the Spirit (ULT) He did this} by his Spirit setting you apart (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **sanctification**, you could express the same idea with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "by the Spirit sanctifying you" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## by the sanctification of the Spirit (ULT) He did this} by his Spirit setting you apart (UST)

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **sanctification** that is produced by the Holy **Spirit**. If this is not clear in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "by the Spirit causing you to be sanctified" (See: [Possession](#))

## for obedience and the sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ (ULT) in order that you may obey {him}, and in order that the death of Jesus the Messiah may make you members of a covenant with God (UST)

Here, **obedience** could refer to: (1) obeying God. Alternate translation: "for obedience of God and the sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ" (2) obeying Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "for obedience of Jesus Christ and the sprinkling of his blood" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, by the sanctification of the Spirit for obedience and the sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ. Grace and peace be multiplied to you.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> God our Father {chose you} according to what he had already decided. {He did this} by his Spirit setting you apart in order that you may obey {him}, and in order that the death of Jesus the Messiah may make you members of a covenant with God. {I pray that} God will increase his kind acts toward you and make you more peaceful.

**for obedience (ULT)**  
**in order that you may obey {him (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **obedience**, you could express the same idea with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “for you to obey” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**for obedience (ULT)**  
**in order that you may obey {him (UST)**

Here, **for** introduces a purpose clause. Peter is stating a purpose for which the Holy Spirit sanctifies believers. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a purpose clause. Alternate translation: “for the purpose of obedience” (See: [Connect — Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

**the sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ (ULT)**  
**the death of Jesus the Messiah may make you members of a covenant with God (UST)**

Peter uses **sprinkling** figuratively to refer to believers being in a covenant relationship with God. Just as Moses sprinkled blood on the people of Israel in [Exodus 24:1–11](#) to symbolize that they were joining in a covenant relationship with God, believers are joined in a covenant relationship with God by means of Jesus’ death. Moses also sprinkled blood on the priests to set them apart to serve God as priests ([Leviticus 8:30](#)). If your readers would not understand this, you could use a simile or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the covenant between believers and God established by the blood of Jesus Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of the blood of Jesus Christ (ULT)**  
**the death of Jesus the Messiah may make you members of a covenant with God (UST)**

Here, **blood** refers figuratively to the death of Jesus. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “of the blood, the symbol of the death of Jesus Christ” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Grace and peace be multiplied to you (ULT)**  
**I pray that} God will increase his kind acts toward you and make you more peaceful (UST)**

In this culture, letter writers would offer a good wish for the recipient before introducing the main business of the letter. Use a form in your language that makes it clear that this is a greeting and blessing. Alternate translation: “May God increase his kind acts to you and make you more peaceful” (See: [Blessings](#))

**Grace and peace be multiplied to you (ULT)**  
**I pray that} God will increase his kind acts toward you and make you more peaceful (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract nouns **grace** and **peace**, you could express the ideas behind them with equivalent expressions. Alternate translation: “May God multiply his kind acts to you and give you a more peaceful spirit” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Grace and peace be multiplied to you (ULT)**

**I pray that} God will increase his kind acts toward you and make you more peaceful (UST)**

Peter speaks of **grace** and **peace** figuratively as if they were objects that could increase in size or number. If this is confusing in your language, you can use a different metaphor that means that these things will increase, or use plain language. Alternate translation: "May grace and peace increase in your lives" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Grace and peace be multiplied to you (ULT)**

**I pray that} God will increase his kind acts toward you and make you more peaceful (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "May God multiply grace and peace to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- the foreknowledge
- of God the Father
- be multiplied
- the sanctification
- of the Spirit
- obedience
- of the blood
- of Jesus
- Christ
- Grace
- peace

**Translation Words - UST**

- God our Father
- what he had already decided
- his kind acts
- make you more peaceful
- He did this} by...setting you apart
- his Spirit
- you may obey {him
- the death of Jesus the Messiah may make you members of a covenant with God
- the death of Jesus the Messiah may make you members of a covenant with God
- the death of Jesus the Messiah may make you members of a covenant with God
- I pray that} God will increase





## **1 Peter 1:3**

## General Information:

Peter begins to talk about the believers' salvation and faith. [Verses 3–5](#) are one sentence, but you may need to divide them into shorter sentences in your language.

### Blessed {is} (ULT)

### Praise (UST)

Peter is using a statement to give an exhortation. If this is confusing in your language, you can use a more natural form for exhortation.

Alternate translation: "Let us bless" or "Let us praise" (See: [Statements — Other Uses](#))

### Father (ULT)

### the Father (UST)

**Father** is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### our...us (ULT)

### our...us (UST)

The words **our** and **us** are inclusive. They refer to Peter and those believers to whom he is writing. Your language may require you to mark these forms. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### of our Lord (ULT)

### of our Lord (UST)

Peter is using the possessive form to describe Jesus as the **Lord** who rules over those who believe in him. If this is not clear in your language, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "of the person who is lord over us," or "of the person who rules over us," (See: [Possession](#))

### according to his great mercy (ULT)

### Because he is very merciful to us (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **mercy**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "according to his great merciful character" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### who...has caused...us...to be born again (ULT)

### he has caused us to experience the new birth (UST)

The phrase **born again** is a metaphor that refers to spiritual rebirth. Since this is an important metaphor in the Bible, you should keep it in your translation and include an explanation if necessary. Alternate translation: "has caused us to be spiritually reborn" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## ULT

<sup>3</sup> Blessed {is} the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who, according to his great mercy, has caused us to be born again into a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from dead ones,

## UST

<sup>3</sup> Praise God, who is the Father of our Lord Jesus the Messiah! Because he is very merciful to us, he has caused us to experience the new birth by bringing Jesus the Messiah back to life after he had died. {God did this} in order that we would have hope that will never disappoint us,

**who...has caused...us...to be born again...into a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from dead ones (ULT)**  
**he has caused us to experience the new birth by bringing Jesus the Messiah back to life after he had died. {God did this} in order that we would have hope that will never disappoint us (UST)**

The clause **into a living hope** is parallel to “into an imperishable and undefiled and unfading inheritance” in the next verse. If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of the phrases in this verse in order to show that parallel structure. Alternate translation: “who has caused us to be born again through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from dead ones into a living hope” (See: [Information Structure](#))

**into a living hope (ULT)**

**God did this} in order that we would have hope that will never disappoint us (UST)**

Here, **into** introduces a purpose clause. Peter is stating a purpose for which God causes believers to be born again. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a purpose clause. Alternate translation: “for the purpose of giving us a living hope” (See: [Connect — Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

**into a living hope (ULT)**

**God did this} in order that we would have hope that will never disappoint us (UST)**

Peter uses **living** figuratively to describe **hope** that is certain and will not lead to disappointment. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “into a hope that will not disappoint you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from dead ones (ULT)**  
**by bringing Jesus the Messiah back to life after he had died (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **resurrection**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “through Jesus Christ being resurrected from among dead ones” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed {is](#)
- [God and Father](#)
- [the resurrection](#)
- [dead ones](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [of Jesus \(2\)](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Christ \(2\)](#)
- [mercy](#)
- [who...has caused...to be born again](#)
- [living](#)
- [a...hope](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- Praise
- God...who is the Father
- after he had died
- hope
- that will never disappoint us
- of...Lord
- Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- the Messiah
- the Messiah (2)
- he is very merciful to us
- he has caused...to experience the new birth
- bringing...back to life

## 1 Peter 1:4

### into an imperishable and undefiled and unfading inheritance (ULT)

Here, **into** introduces a purpose clause. Peter is stating a second purpose for which God causes believers to be born again. This clause states what the “living hope” in the previous verse is. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a purpose clause. Alternate translation: “for the purpose of giving us an imperishable and undefiled and unfading inheritance” (See: [Connect — Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#) )

### into an imperishable and undefiled and unfading inheritance (ULT)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **inheritance**, you could express the same idea with a verb. Alternate translation: “into what we will inherit that is imperishable and undefiled and unfading” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### an imperishable and undefiled and unfading inheritance (ULT)

Peter uses **inheritance** figuratively to refer to what we will receive in heaven. This could refer to: (1) The promise of God that we will live forever with him. Alternate translation: “a sure and unfailing promise the we will live forever with God” (2) future blessings in heaven after this life. Alternate translation: “imperishable and undefiled and unfading blessings” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### having been kept in heaven for you (ULT)

### which is what God has kept for us in heaven (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “which God has kept in heaven for you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [an...inheritance](#)
- [heaven](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we might inherit](#)
- [heaven](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> into an imperishable and undefiled and unfading [inheritance](#), having been kept in [heaven](#) for you,

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> {that is,} in order that [we might inherit](#) what cannot perish, be defiled, or fade, which is what God has kept for us in [heaven](#).



## 1 Peter 1:5

## the ones being protected by the power of God (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the ones whom God is protecting with his power” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## through faith (ULT) by means of your trust {in Jesus (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **faith**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “by believing in Jesus” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## for a salvation (ULT) He is guarding you} in order...your salvation (UST)

Here, **for** introduces a purpose clause. Peter is stating a purpose for which God is protecting believers. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a purpose clause. Alternate translation: “for the purpose of giving us a salvation” (See: [Connect — Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

## for a salvation ready to be revealed (ULT) He is guarding you} in order to reveal your salvation (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **salvation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “for the time when God saves you, which is ready to be revealed” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## ready to be revealed (ULT) to reveal (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that God is ready to reveal” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## in the last time (ULT) at the final time {when Jesus returns to judge everyone (UST)

Here, **the last time** refers to “the day of the Lord,” which is the time when Jesus returns to the world to judge everyone and vindicate those who believe in him. (See: [day of the Lord, day of Yahweh](#)) If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “in the last time, when Jesus returns and judges everyone” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- the power
- of God
- faith

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> the ones being protected by the power of God through faith, for a salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> God's power is guarding you by means of your trust {in Jesus}. {He is guarding you} in order to reveal your salvation at the final time {when Jesus returns to judge everyone}.



- a salvation
- to be revealed
- the last time
- the...time

## Translation Words - UST

- God's
- power
- your trust {in Jesus
- to reveal
- your salvation
- the final time {when Jesus returns to judge everyone
- the...time {when Jesus returns to judge everyone

## 1 Peter 1:6

### In this (ULT) because of what will happen then (UST)

Here, **this** could refer to: (1) the “last time” referred to at the end of the previous verse. Alternate translation: “About this last time” (2) everything described in [verses 3–5](#). Alternate translation: “In all of this that I have said” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### In this you greatly rejoice (ULT) You rejoice a lot because of what will happen then (UST)

**In** here introduces the reason why Peter’s readers rejoice. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “On account of this you greatly rejoice” or “Because of this you greatly rejoice” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### if now it is necessary to have been distressed (ULT) even though now...must grieve you (UST)

Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might misunderstand and think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you can translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: “if now it is necessary, and it is, to have been distressed” (See: [Connect — Factual Conditions](#) )

### if now it is necessary to have been distressed a little while in various trials (ULT) even though now for a short time many different hardships must grieve you (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “if now it is necessary for various trials to distress you a little while” (See: [Active or Passive](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you greatly rejoice](#)
- [trials](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You rejoice a lot](#)
- [hardships](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> In this [you greatly rejoice](#), if now it is necessary to have been distressed a little while in various [trials](#)

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> [You rejoice a lot](#) because of what will happen then, even though now for a short time many different [hardships](#) must grieve you.



## 1 Peter 1:7

**the genuineness of your faith...but being tested by fire (ULT)  
to prove that you really trust {in Jesus...even though someone has tested it by {passing it through} fire (UST)**

Here Peter speaks of **faith** figuratively, as if it were gold that is refined by passing it through **fire**. He also uses **fire** figuratively to refer to the hardships that test how well believers trust in Christ. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a simile. Alternate translation: “the genuineness of your faith ... but being tested by hardships the way fire tests gold” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the genuineness of your faith (ULT)  
to prove that you really trust {in Jesus (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **genuineness** and **faith**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: “the fact that you genuinely believe” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**so that the genuineness of your faith—more precious than the perishing gold, but being tested by fire—it might be found to result in praise and glory and honor at the revelation of Jesus Christ (ULT)**

If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of these phrases. Alternate translation: “so that the genuineness of your faith might be found to result in praise and glory and honor at the revelation of Jesus Christ; that faith is more precious than the perishing gold, but being tested by fire” (See: [Information Structure](#))

**of your faith—more precious than the perishing gold, but being tested by fire (ULT)  
you really trust {in Jesus}. {That trust} is more valuable to God than gold, which someone can destroy even though someone has tested it by {passing it through} fire (UST)**

In this clause Peter means that **faith** is more valuable than **gold** because faith lasts forever but gold does not, even if it is refined by someone passing it through **fire**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. It may be helpful to make this a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “of your faith, which is more precious than gold because even gold that is tested by fire can perish, but your faith will not perish” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**it might be found to result in praise and glory and honor (ULT)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “it might result in praise and glory and honor” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> so that the genuineness of your **faith**—more precious than the **perishing gold**, but **being tested** by **fire**—it might be found to result in **praise** and **glory** and **honor** at the **revelation** of **Jesus Christ**,

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> {These hardships} happen in order to prove that you **really trust** {in **Jesus**}. {That trust} is more valuable to God than **gold**, **which someone can destroy** even though someone has tested it by {passing it through} **fire**. Because you trust in Jesus, God will **praise**, **glorify**, and **honor** you when **Jesus the Messiah** {returns and} reveals himself.

## at the revelation of Jesus Christ (ULT)

### when Jesus the Messiah {returns and} reveals himself (UST)

Peter assumes that his readers will know that he is referring to the future **revelation of Jesus Christ**, when Jesus returns to earth. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: “at the future revelation of Jesus Christ” or “when Jesus Christ reveals himself again in the future” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## at the revelation of Jesus Christ (ULT)

### when Jesus the Messiah {returns and} reveals himself (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **revelation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “at the time when Jesus Christ is revealed” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- of...faith
- perishing
- Christ
- gold
- being tested
- fire
- praise
- glory
- honor
- the revelation
- of Jesus

## Translation Words - UST

- really trust...in Jesus
- returns and} reveals himself
- gold
- which someone can destroy
- fire
- praise
- glorify
- honor you
- Jesus
- the Messiah
- even though someone has tested it

## 1 Peter 1:8

**with joy inexpressible and filled with glory  
(ULT)**

**with joy that you can hardly express (UST)**

Here, **inexpressible** and **filled with glory** mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize how great the joy is. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “with joy so great that words cannot describe it” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you love](#)
- [believing](#)
- [you exult](#)
- [with joy](#)
- [filled with glory](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You love...him](#)
- [you trust him](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [with joy that you can hardly express](#)
- [with joy that you can hardly express](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> whom, not having seen, [you love](#), in whom, not seeing {him} now, but [believing, you exult with joy](#) inexpressible and [filled with glory](#),

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [You love](#) Jesus, although you have not seen [him](#). Although you do not see him now, [you trust him](#) and [rejoice with joy that you can hardly express](#)

## 1 Peter 1:9

**receiving for yourselves...the salvation (ULT)  
because you are experiencing...God is saving...  
from the guilt of your sins (UST)**

Here Peter speaks figuratively of **salvation** as if it were an object that someone could receive. If this would confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "experiencing ... the salvation" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of your faith (ULT)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **faith**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "of you believing in Jesus" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the salvation of {your} souls (ULT)  
God is saving you from the guilt of your sins (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **salvation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "God saving your souls" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the salvation of {your} souls (ULT)  
God is saving you from the guilt of your sins (UST)**

Here, **souls** refers to the individual Christians to whom Peter is writing this letter. If this might confuse your readers, you could use plain language. Alternate translation: "your salvation" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [receiving for yourselves](#)
- [of...faith](#)
- [the salvation](#)
- [of {your} souls](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [because you are experiencing](#)
- [trusting him](#)
- [God is saving...from the guilt of your sins](#)
- [you](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [receiving for yourselves](#) the outcome of your [faith](#), the salvation of {your} souls.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [because you are experiencing](#) the result of [trusting him](#): [God is saving you from the guilt of your sins](#).



## 1 Peter 1:10

### searched and inquired carefully (ULT) investigated very carefully (UST)

The phrases **searched** and **inquired carefully** mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize how hard the prophets tried to understand this salvation. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “examined very carefully” (See: [Doublet](#))

### this salvation (ULT) God saving you (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **salvation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “God saving you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### grace for you (ULT) God graciously saving you (UST)

Here, **this grace** refers to **this salvation**, mentioned earlier in this verse. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **grace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “God being gracious to you by saving you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> The prophets searched and inquired carefully about this salvation, having prophesied about this grace for you,

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> {Long ago} prophets investigated very carefully about God saving you. They spoke what God told them about God graciously saving you.

### Translation Words - ULT

- The prophets
- having prophesied
- searched
- salvation
- grace

### Translation Words - UST

- Long ago} prophets
- They spoke what God told them
- investigated very carefully
- God saving you
- God graciously saving you



## **1 Peter 1:11**

## into whom or what time (ULT) They were trying to find out...whom...and what time the Spirit was referring to (UST)

The word translated **whom** could also be translated “what.” In that case, “what” would refer to the time when salvation would take place and **what time** would then refer to the specific circumstances. However, most translations agree with the ULT’s use of **whom**. Alternate translation: “into what time or what circumstances” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## the...Spirit of Christ (ULT) the...Spirit of the Messiah (UST)

Peter is using the possessive form to describe the Holy Spirit as being **the Spirit** that is associated with **Christ**. If this is not clear in your language, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit, associated with Christ,” (See: [Possession](#))

## testifying beforehand (ULT) The Spirit was referring to these things} when he told them beforehand (UST)

This could indicate: (1) the time when **the Spirit of Christ was revealing** information to the prophets. Alternate translation: “when testifying beforehand” (2) the means by which **the Spirit of Christ was revealing** information to the prophets. Alternate translation: “by means of testifying beforehand”

## about the sufferings of Christ and the glories after these things (ULT) that the Messiah would suffer and that glorious things would happen afterwards (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **sufferings** and **glories**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: “about how Christ would suffer, and glorious things would happen afterwards” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [testifying beforehand](#)
- [about...sufferings](#)
- [glories](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Spirit](#)
- [of the Messiah](#)
- [the Messiah](#)

## ULT

<sup>11</sup> inquiring into whom or what [time](#) the [Spirit of Christ](#) in them was revealing, [testifying beforehand about](#) the [sufferings](#) of [Christ](#) and the [glories](#) after these things.

## UST

<sup>11</sup> They were trying to find out whom the [Spirit of the Messiah](#) that was in them was referring to, and what [time the Spirit was referring to](#). {[The Spirit was referring to these things](#)} when he told them beforehand that the [Messiah would suffer](#) and that [glorious things](#) would happen afterwards.

- time the Spirit was referring to
- The Spirit was referring to these things} when he told them beforehand
- would suffer
- glorious things



## **1 Peter 1:12**

## It was revealed to them (ULT) God told these prophets (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God revealed to them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## which have now been declared to you by those who proclaimed the gospel to you (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “which those who proclaimed the gospel to you have now declared to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## by the Holy Spirit sent from heaven (ULT) by the Holy Spirit whom God sent from heaven {enabling them to do that (UST)

This phrase indicates the means by which the evangelists proclaimed the gospel to Peter’s readers. Peter uses **the Holy Spirit** here to refer specifically to the Holy Spirit’s work of giving those evangelists the ability or power to proclaim the gospel effectively. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “by means of the Holy Spirit sent from heaven enabling them to do so” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## sent from heaven (ULT) whom God sent from heaven (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language, as in the UST. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## into which things (ULT) more about what these people declared to you (UST)

Here, **things** refers to what God had revealed to the prophets and some evangelists had proclaimed to Peter’s readers. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “into which things God revealed to the prophets and which were declared to you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## into which things angels desire to look (ULT) Angels would like to know more about what these people declared to you (UST)

Peter uses **look** figuratively to refer to getting a clearer understanding of what God has revealed about salvation. This does not mean that the angels do not understand salvation at all. If this might confuse your readers, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “things which angels desire to understand more clearly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> It was revealed to them that they were not serving themselves, but you, in these things which have now been declared to you by those who proclaimed the gospel to you by the Holy Spirit sent from heaven—into which things angels desire to look.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> God told these prophets that it was not for their own benefit that he was revealing these things to them, but that it was for your benefit. Those people who preached the good news to you now have declared these things to you by the Holy Spirit whom God sent from heaven {enabling them to do that}. Angels would like to know more about what these people declared to you.



## Translation Words - ULT

- It was revealed
- they were...serving
- who proclaimed the gospel
- by the Holy Spirit
- sent
- heaven
- angels

## Translation Words - UST

- God told
- benefit
- Those people who preached the good news
- by the Holy Spirit...enabling them to do that
- whom God sent
- heaven
- Angels



## **1 Peter 1:13**

## Therefore (ULT)

### As a result of all these things (UST)

**Therefore** here refers back to everything that Peter has written in [verses 1–12](#). If it might be helpful to your readers, you could state this concisely. Alternate translation: “Since all these things I have just written are true” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

### having girded up the loins of your mind, being sober, hope fully (ULT)

### prepare your minds for action. Be alert. Be completely confident (UST)

The clauses **having girded up the loins of your mind** and **being sober** could indicate: (1) two commands in addition to the command to **hope fully** that occurs in the next phrase. Alternate translation: “gird up the loins of your mind, be sober, hope fully” (2) two actions that are means by which Peter wants his readers to obey the command to **hope fully**. Alternate translation: “hope fully, by having girded up the loins of your mind and by being sober” (See: [Statements — Other Uses](#))

### having girded up the loins of your mind (ULT)

### prepare your minds for action (UST)

Girding up **the loins** is an idiom that means to prepare to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease. If this might confuse your readers, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “having prepared your minds for action” (See: [Idiom](#))

### being sober (ULT)

### Be alert (UST)

Here Peter uses **sober** figuratively to refer to mental clarity and alertness. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “thinking clearly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the grace being brought to you (ULT)

### that God will graciously save you (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the grace God is bringing to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the grace being brought to you (ULT)

### that God will graciously save you (UST)

Here Peter speaks of **grace** as if it were an object that could be brought to people. If this might confuse you readers, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the grace God is giving to you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## ULT

<sup>13</sup> Therefore, having girded up the [loins](#) of your [mind](#), [being sober](#), hope fully in the [grace](#) being brought to you in [the revelation of Jesus Christ](#).

## UST

<sup>13</sup> As a result of all these things, [prepare](#) your [minds for action](#). [Be alert](#). Be completely confident [that God will graciously save you](#) when [Jesus the Messiah](#) {returns and} reveals himself.

## **the grace being brought to you (ULT)** **that God will graciously save you (UST)**

Here, **the grace** refers to salvation, as it also does in [verse 10](#). If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the gracious salvation being brought to you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## **the revelation of Jesus Christ (ULT)** **Jesus the Messiah {returns and} reveals himself (UST)**

See how you translated this phrase in [verse 7](#). (See: [Possession](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- loins
- of...mind
- being sober
- grace
- the revelation
- of Jesus
- Christ

### **Translation Words - UST**

- prepare...for action
- minds
- Be alert
- that God will graciously save you
- Jesus
- the Messiah
- returns and} reveals himself



## **1 Peter 1:14**

## **As children of obedience (ULT)** **Because you obey God like children ought to obey their fathers (UST)**

Here Peter uses **children** figuratively to refer to people who love and obey God. The relationship between God and those who love him is like the relationship between a father and his children. Because this is an important concept in the Bible, you should not express the meaning plainly here, but you may use a simile. Alternate translation: "Like children of obedience" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## **children of obedience (ULT)** **Because you obey God like children ought to obey their fathers (UST)**

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **children** who are characterized by **obedience**. If this is not clear in your language, you could use the adjective "obedient" instead of the noun "obedience." Alternate translation: "obedient children" (See: [Possession](#))

## **not being conformed to {your} former...desires (ULT)** **do not allow yourself to be controlled...the...used to have...by...sinful} desires (UST)**

Here, **not being conformed to** is an idiom meaning "not letting one's life be controlled by." If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "not being controlled by your former desires" (See: [Idiom](#))

## **not being conformed to {your} former...desires (ULT)** **do not allow yourself to be controlled...the...used to have...by...sinful} desires (UST)**

Peter is using a statement to give a command. If this is confusing in your language, you can use a more natural form for a command. Alternate translation: "do not be conformed to your former desires" (See: [Statements — Other Uses](#))

## **in your ignorance (ULT)** **you...when you did not know {the truth about God (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **ignorance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "when you were ignorant" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [As](#)
- [children](#)
- [of obedience](#)
- [desires](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>14</sup> [As children of obedience](#), not being conformed to {your} former [desires](#) in your ignorance,

### **UST**

<sup>14</sup> [Because you obey God like children ought to obey their fathers](#), do not allow yourself to be controlled by the {[sinful](#)} [desires](#) you used to have when you did not know {the truth about God}.



## Translation Words - UST

- Because you obey God like children ought to obey their fathers
- Because you obey God like children ought to obey their fathers
- Because you obey God like children ought to obey their fathers
- by...sinful} desires

## 1 Peter 1:15

**the one who called you (ULT)**  
**God, the one who chose you {to belong to him (UST)}**

This phrase refers to God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "God who called you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**in all {your} behavior (ULT)**  
**when you do anything (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **behavior**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "in how you conduct yourselves" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- who called
- is} holy
- holy

### Translation Words - UST

- God...one who chose
- is holy
- in a holy manner

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> but as the one [who called](#) you {is} [holy](#), you yourselves also be [holy](#) in all {your} behavior.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> Instead, just like [God](#), the [one who chose](#) you {to belong to him}, [is holy](#), act [in a holy manner](#) when you do anything.

## 1 Peter 1:16

### it is written (ULT)

### Moses wrote {in the scriptures that God said (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, Moses was the author of the quotation that follows. Alternate translation: "Moses had written" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> For [it is written](#), "You will be [holy](#), because I {am} [holy](#)."

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Be holy, because [Moses wrote {in the scriptures that God said}](#), "Be [holy](#) because I [am holy](#)."

### it is written (ULT)

### Moses wrote {in the scriptures that God said (UST)

Here Peter uses **it is written** to introduce a quotation from an Old Testament book ([Leviticus 11:44](#)). If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use a comparable phrase that indicates that Peter is quoting from an important text. Alternate translation: "it had been written in the scriptures" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

### You will be holy (ULT)

### Be holy (UST)

Peter quotes God using a future statement to give a command. If this is confusing in your language, you can use a more natural form for a command. Alternate translation: "You must be holy" (See: [Statements — Other Uses](#))

### because I {am} holy (ULT)

### because I am holy (UST)

In this quotation from the Old Testament, **I** refers to God. If this is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "because I, God, am holy" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [it is written](#)
- [holy](#)
- [holy](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Moses wrote {in the scriptures that God said](#)
- [holy](#)
- [am holy](#)

## 1 Peter 1:17

### if...you call (ULT)

### Since...you call (UST)

Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might misunderstand and think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you can translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: “because you call” (See: [Connect — Factual Conditions](#) )

### the one judging impartially (ULT)

### God is the one who judges...and he judges without bias (UST)

This phrase refers to God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “God, who judges impartially” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### during the time of your sojourn (ULT)

### while you are temporarily living {far away from your true home in heaven (UST)

Here Peter speaks of his readers as if they were people living in a foreign land far away from their homes. Like people living away from home, so are Christians living away from their home in heaven. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a simile. Alternate translation: “during the time that you are living away from your true home” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- you call
- Father
- judging
- work
- fear
- during...time

## Translation Words - UST

- God is...one who judges
- what...does
- you call
- him 'Father
- in a way that shows you fear him
- while you are temporarily living...far away from your true home in heaven

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> And if you call “Father” the one judging impartially according to the work of each one, conduct yourselves in fear during the time of your sojourn,

### UST

<sup>17</sup> God is the one who judges what each person does, and he judges without bias. Since you call him ‘Father,’ behave in a way that shows you fear him while you are temporarily living {far away from your true home in heaven}.



## **1 Peter 1:18**

**you have been redeemed not with perishable things, with silver or with gold, from your futile behavior handed down from {your} fathers (ULT)  
that {God paid to free you} from behaving foolishly, as your ancestors taught you {to behave}. God did not pay to free you with things like silver or gold that will not last forever (UST)**

If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of these phrases. Alternate translation: “you have been redeemed from your futile behavior handed down from your fathers, not with perishable things, with silver or with gold” (See: [Information Structure](#))

## ULT

<sup>18</sup> [knowing](#) that [you have been redeemed](#) not [with perishable things](#), [with silver](#) or [with gold](#), from your [futile behavior](#) handed down from {your} fathers,

## UST

<sup>18</sup> {[Behave in](#) that [way](#)} because you [know](#) that {God paid to free you} from [behaving foolishly](#), as your ancestors taught you {to behave}. [God did](#) not [pay to free you](#) with [things like silver](#) or [gold that will not last forever](#).

**you have been redeemed (ULT)  
God did...pay to free you (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God has redeemed you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**from your futile behavior handed down from {your} fathers (ULT)  
God paid to free you} from behaving foolishly, as your ancestors taught you {to behave (UST)**

Here, **handed down** figuratively refers to one generation teaching **futile behavior** to another generation, as if that behavior were an object that could be passed by hand from one person to another. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “from your futile behavior taught to you by your fathers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**from your futile behavior (ULT)  
God paid to free you} from behaving foolishly (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **behavior**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “from behaving in futile ways” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**handed down from {your} fathers (ULT)  
as your ancestors taught you {to behave (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that your fathers handed down” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [knowing](#)
- [you have been redeemed](#)

- with perishable things
- with silver
- with gold
- futile

## Translation Words - UST

- Behave in...way} because you know
- you...behaving foolishly
- God did...pay to free you
- things like silver
- gold
- that...with...that will not last forever



## 1 Peter 1:19

**with the precious blood...of Christ (ULT)**  
**by...priceless death {on the cross...the**  
**Messiah's (UST)**

Peter uses **the blood of Christ** figuratively to refer to Jesus' death. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "with Christ's precious death" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**as of an unblemished and spotless lamb (ULT)**  
**That death was} like {the deaths} of the**  
**entirely perfect lambs {that the Jewish priests**  
**sacrificed (UST)**

Peter compares Jesus' blood to the blood of the lambs that the Jewish priests sacrificed to God because of the people's sins. The point of this comparison is that Jesus died as a sacrifice so that God would forgive people's sins. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "like that of the unblemished and spotless lambs that the Jewish priests sacrificed to God for sins" (See: [Simile](#))

**unblemished and spotless (ULT)**  
**entirely perfect (UST)**

The words **unblemished** and **spotless** mean basically the same thing. Peter uses this repetition to emphasize that Christ was completely perfect and sinless. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "completely perfect" or "with no imperfections at all" (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- with the...blood
- precious
- of Christ
- as
- of an...lamb
- unblemished

### Translation Words - UST

- the Messiah's
- priceless
- by...death {on the cross
- That death was} like
- the deaths} of the...lambs {that the Jewish priests sacrificed
- entirely perfect

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> but with the precious blood of Christ, as of an unblemished and spotless lamb,

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Instead, {God paid for you to be free} by the Messiah's priceless death {on the cross}. {That death was} like {the deaths} of the entirely perfect lambs {that the Jewish priests sacrificed}.



## **1 Peter 1:20**

## having been foreknown (ULT) God chose him to do this (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God having foreknown him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## having been foreknown (ULT) God chose him to do this (UST)

This phrase could mean: (1) God had determined what Christ would do. Alternate translation: “having been planned previously” (2) God knew what Christ would do ahead of time. Alternate translation: “having been known beforehand,” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## before the foundation of the world (ULT) before...he created the world (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **foundation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “before God founded the world” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## having been revealed (ULT) that God revealed him (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God having revealed him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## having been revealed (ULT) that God revealed him (UST)

Here, **having been revealed** refers to the first time Jesus came to the earth. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “having been revealed when he came to earth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## in the last of the times (ULT) in this last time period (UST)

Here, **the last of the times** refers to the final period of history which began when Jesus came to the earth for the first time. This period will end when Jesus returns to earth. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “in this final time period of history” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [having been foreknown](#)
- [the foundation](#)
- [of the world](#)
- [having been revealed](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> [having been foreknown](#) before [the foundation of the world](#), but [having been revealed](#) in [the last of the times](#) for you,

### UST

<sup>20</sup> [God chose him to do this](#) before [he created the world](#). But {it was now,} in [this last time period](#), that [God revealed him](#) to you.

- the last of the times
- of...times

## Translation Words - UST

- God chose him to do this
- he created
- the world
- this last time period
- this last time period
- that God revealed him

## 1 Peter 1:21

**who has raised him from dead ones (ULT)**  
**He caused the Messiah to become alive again**  
**after he had died (UST)**

Here, to **raise him** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “who caused him to live again so that he was no longer among the dead people” (See: [Idiom](#))

**has given him glory (ULT)**  
**has shown how great he is (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “has glorified him” or “has shown that he is glorious” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**your faith and hope are in God (ULT)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **faith** and **hope**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: “you would believe and hope in God” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [believing](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [who has raised](#)
- [dead ones](#)
- [glory](#)
- [faith](#)
- [hope](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you are trusting](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [He caused...to become alive again](#)
- [after he had died](#)
- [has shown how great he is](#)
- [are trusting](#)
- [expecting {him to do great things}](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> those through him [believing](#) in [God](#), [who has raised](#) him from [dead ones](#) and has given him [glory](#), so that your [faith](#) and [hope](#) are in [God](#).

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Because of what the Messiah has done, [you are trusting](#) in [God](#). [He caused](#) the Messiah [to become alive again after he had died](#) and [has shown how great he is](#). As a result, you [are trusting God](#) and [expecting {him to do great things}](#).



## **1 Peter 1:22**



## Having purified your souls (ULT) Because you have made yourselves pure (UST)

**Having purified** figuratively refers to being forgiven for sins. In the Bible, sin is often referred to as something that makes people dirty, and the forgiveness for sin is referred to as the removal of that dirt. God is the one who forgives sins and **purifies** those who believe in Jesus. However, here Peter is referring to his readers' responsibility in their salvation, which is the responsibility to repent and believe that the gospel is true. Alternate translation: "Having made your souls spiritually pure" or "Having cleansed your souls from sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## souls (ULT) yourselves (UST)

See how you translated **souls** in [verse 9](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## by obedience to the truth (ULT) by obeying the true teachings {of Jesus (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **obedience** and **truth**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: "by obeying what is true" or "by obeying the true information" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## to the truth (ULT) the true teachings {of Jesus (UST)

Here, **the truth** refers to the true teaching about Jesus, which includes the command to repent and believe the gospel. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "to the true message about Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## brotherly love (ULT) love other believers (UST)

Although **brotherly** is a masculine word, Peter is using the phrase **brotherly love** in a generic sense to refer to the kind of love that all believers should have for other believers. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "love for fellow believers" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## love one another earnestly from a pure heart (ULT) love each other sincerely and fervently (UST)

Peter uses **heart** here figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts or emotions. The word **from** indicates that the **heart** must be the source of the **love** that Peter is telling his readers to have. Therefore, this phrase has a similar meaning to the word "sincere" in the previous clause. If this would confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "love one another earnestly based on sincere thoughts" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Having purified your souls by obedience to the truth for sincere brotherly love, love one another earnestly from a pure heart, <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Because you have made yourselves pure by obeying the true teachings {of Jesus} in order to genuinely love other believers, love each other sincerely and fervently.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Having purified
- a pure
- souls
- obedience
- to...truth
- brotherly love
- love
- heart

## Translation Words - UST

- Because you have made...pure
- sincerely
- yourselves
- obeying
- true teachings {of Jesus
- love other believers
- love
- sincerely



## 1 Peter 1:23

**having been born again (ULT)**  
**Do this} because God has caused you to experience the new birth (UST)**

See how you translated **born again** in [verse 3](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**not from perishable seed (ULT)**  
**You did not experience this new birth} by means of something that will perish (UST)**

The word **seed** usually refers to either the seed of a plant or the sperm cell of a man, which is used to produce a baby. However, here Peter uses **seed** as a metaphor. It could refer to: (1) the **word of God** mentioned later in the verse. In this case, Peter is saying what the **word of God** is not. Alternate translation: “not by means of a human message that can perish” (2) physical human birth, in which case the meaning is similar to the idea expressed in [John 1:13](#). Alternate translation: “not by means of mortal physical birth” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## ULT

<sup>23</sup> [having been born again](#), not from [perishable seed](#), but from imperishable, through the [living](#) and enduring [word of God](#).

## UST

<sup>23</sup> {[Do this](#)} because God has caused you to [experience the new birth](#). {You did not experience this new birth} by means of [something that will perish](#). Rather, {you experienced it} by means of something that will never perish: [The message {about Jesus} that came from God and truly lasts forever](#).

**from imperishable (ULT)**  
**you experienced it} by means of something that will never perish (UST)**

Peter is leaving out a word that a phrase would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply the word from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “from imperishable seed” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**the living and enduring word of God (ULT)**  
**The message {about Jesus} that came from God and truly lasts forever (UST)**

Here Peter uses **word** figuratively to describe the gospel message that came from God and was proclaimed to Peter’s readers by using words. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “God’s living and enduring message about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**living...and enduring (ULT)**  
**that came from God and truly lasts forever...that came from God and truly lasts forever (UST)**

Here, **living** and **enduring** mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize that God’s word is permanent. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “perpetually enduring” (See: [Doublet](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [having been born again](#)
- [perishable](#)
- [seed](#)
- [living](#)
- [the...word](#)
- [of God](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- Do this} because God has caused you to experience the new birth
- something that will perish
- something that will perish
- The message {about Jesus
- that came from God and truly lasts forever
- that came from God and truly lasts forever



## 1 Peter 1:24



## For (ULT)

### We know that this is true} because, {as the prophet Isaiah wrote (UST)

**For** here introduces a quotation of some phrases from an Old Testament book ([Isaiah 40:6–8](#)). If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use a comparable phrase that indicates that Peter is quoting from an important text. Alternate translation: “It is as Isaiah wrote in the scriptures” (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

In these clauses and the first clause of the next verse, Peter quotes parts of [Isaiah 40:6–8](#). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

## All flesh (ULT)

### All people (UST)

Here Peter quotes Isaiah using the term **flesh** figuratively to refer to human beings in general, which are made of flesh. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “All humankind” or “Everyone” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## all its glory (ULT)

### everything that is great about people (UST)

Peter quotes Isaiah using **glory** figuratively to refer to whatever is beautiful or magnificent about humankind. If this might confuse your readers, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “everything that is glorious about humankind” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Peter quotes Isaiah speaking of **grass** and flowers in general, not of one particular blade of **grass** or one **flower**. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: “flowers of grass. Grass dried up, and flowers fell off” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

## the flower of the grass (ULT)

### flowers in the grass (UST)

Here Peter quotes Isaiah using the possessive form to describe the **flower** that grows in the **grass**. If this is not clear in your language, you could state this explicitly. Alternate translation: “the flower that grows in the grass” (See: [Possession](#))

## The grass was dried up (ULT)

### Just as grass dies (UST)

In this clause the prophet Isaiah continues the comparison between humankind and **grass**. Just like **grass** dies quickly, so human beings only live a short time. If this would confuse your readers, you could express this meaning by repeating the simile language from earlier in the verse. Alternate translation: “Like the grass dries up, so do people die after a short time” (See: [Simile](#))

## ULT

<sup>24</sup> For, “All **flesh** {is} like grass, and all its **glory** {is} like the flower of the grass. The grass was dried up, and the flower fell off,

## UST

<sup>24</sup> {We know that this is true} because, {as the prophet Isaiah wrote,} “All **people are like** grass, and everything **that is great about people is like** flowers in the grass. Just as grass dies and flowers wither, {so do people die and what is great about them only lasts for a short time}.

**the flower fell off (ULT)****flowers whither, {so do people die and what is great about them only lasts for a short time (UST)**

In this clause the prophet Isaiah continues the comparison between the glory of humankind and flowers. Just like a **flower** dies and falls to the ground, so does the beauty of mankind disappear. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you could express this meaning by repeating the simile language from earlier in the verse.

Alternate translation: "like the flower that fell off the plant, so does everything that is glorious about humankind come to an end" (See: [Simile](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [flesh](#)
- [is} like](#)
- [is} like](#) (2)
- [glory](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [people](#)
- [are like](#)
- [is like](#) (2)
- [that is great about people](#)

## 1 Peter 1:25

### but the word of the Lord endures into eternity (ULT)

This clause completes Peters quotation of [Isaiah 40:6–8](#) that began in the previous verse. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this ending by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the end of a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

### the...word of the Lord (ULT)

Peter quotes Isaiah using **word** figuratively to describe all that God has spoken by using words. This general reference to God's word would include what God had said about the Messiah. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the message that comes from the Lord" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### And this is the word (ULT)

Here Peter uses **word** in the same specific sense as in [verse 23](#). It is not the general meaning of **word** used earlier in the verse. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "And this is the message about Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the word that has been proclaimed (ULT)

### the good news {about the Messiah} that we have declared (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the word that we have proclaimed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)
- [word](#) (2)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [eternity](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God's](#)
- [message](#)
- [good news {about the Messiah} that we have declared](#) (2)
- [forever](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> but the [word of the Lord](#) endures into [eternity](#)." And this is the [word](#) that has been proclaimed to you.

1:22 <sup>[1]</sup>

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> But [God's message](#) lasts [forever](#)." This message {that lasts forever} is the [good news {about the Messiah} that we have declared](#) to you.

# 1 Peter 2

## 1 Peter 2 General Notes

### Structure and Formatting

Command to love each other as a family (1:22–2:10)

How believers should act toward other people (2:11–3:12)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 2:10 and the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 2:6, 7, 8, and 22.

### Special Concepts in this Chapter

#### Stones

The Bible uses a building made of large stones as a metaphor for the church. Jesus is the cornerstone, which is the most important stone. According to [Ephesians 2:20](#), the apostles and prophets are the foundation, which is the part of the building on which all the other stones rest. In this chapter, Christians are the stones that make up the walls of the building. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [cornerstone](#) and [found, founder, foundation](#))

#### Milk and babies

When Peter tells his readers to “long for pure spiritual milk” in [2:2](#), he is using the metaphor of a baby craving his mother’s milk. Peter wants Christians to crave God’s word the same way a baby craves milk. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Sheep and shepherds

The Bible often speaks metaphorically of people as sheep because sheep do not see well, do not think well, often walk away from those who care for them, and cannot defend themselves when other animals attack them. In [verse 25](#), Peter alludes to [Isaiah 53:6](#) to describe unbelievers as sheep that wander aimlessly and don’t know where they are going. God’s people are also similar to sheep in that they are weak and do foolish things like rebelling against God. In [verse 25](#), Peter also refers to Jesus as a shepherd who takes care of believers, which is a similar idea to what Jesus said in [John 10:11–18](#). (See: [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#) and [shepherd, herder, pastor](#))



## 1 Peter 2:1

## Therefore (ULT)

### Because {these things are true (UST)

**Therefore** here refers back to everything that Peter has said in the previous paragraph (1:22–25). (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**having put aside...all evil and all deceit and hypocrisies and envies and all slanders (ULT)**  
**do not act...wickedly or deceive others in any way. Do not be hypocrites, and do not envy others. Do not speak evil things falsely about anyone (UST)**

This clause indicates a command in addition to the command to “long for pure spiritual milk” that occurs next in the verse. If this is confusing in your language, you can use a more natural form for a command. Alternate translation: “put aside all evil and all deceit and hypocrisies and envies and all slanders” (See: [Statements — Other Uses](#) )

**having put aside...all evil and all deceit and hypocrisies and envies and all slanders (ULT)**  
**do not act...wickedly or deceive others in any way. Do not be hypocrites, and do not envy others. Do not speak evil things falsely about anyone (UST)**

Peter speaks of these sinful actions figuratively as if they were objects that people could **put aside** the way people remove dirty clothing. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “having stopped being evil or being deceptive or being hypocritical or being envious or speaking slander” (See: [Metaphor](#) )

**having put aside...all evil and all deceit and hypocrisies and envies and all slanders (ULT)**  
**do not act...wickedly or deceive others in any way. Do not be hypocrites, and do not envy others. Do not speak evil things falsely about anyone (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **evil**, **deceit**, **hypocrisies**, **envies**, or **slanders**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: “having put aside every kind of evil and all deceitful, hypocritical, deceptive, and slanderous acts” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) )

## Translation Words - ULT

- evil
- deceit
- hypocrisies
- envies
- slanders

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> Therefore, having put aside all **evil** and all **deceit** and **hypocrisies** and **envies** and all **slanders**,

## UST

<sup>1</sup> Because {these things are true}, do not act **wickedly** or **deceive others** in any way. **Do not be hypocrites**, and **do not envy others**. **Do not speak evil things falsely about anyone**.

## Translation Words - UST

- wickedly
- deceive others
- Do not be hypocrites
- do not envy others
- Do not speak evil things falsely about anyone





## **1 Peter 2:2**

**as newborn babies, long for the pure rational milk (ULT)**

**Just as newborn babies strongly desire their mothers' pure milk, so you should strongly desire to learn true things about God (UST)**

The point of this comparison is that Peter wanted his readers to desire knowledge of God's word just as **newborn babies** desire milk. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "Just as babies long for their mother's milk, so you must long for the pure rational milk" (See: [Simile](#))

**long for (ULT)**

**so you should strongly desire (UST)**

Alternate translation: "desire intensely" or "yearn for"

**the pure rational milk (ULT)**

**to learn true things about God (UST)**

The word translated as **rational** could also be translated "pertaining to the word"; it refers to the word of God. Peter speaks figuratively of the word of God as if it were **rational milk** that nourishes children. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "God's pure word" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you may grow up (ULT)**

**you may become spiritually mature. {You must do this (UST)}**

Peter speaks figuratively of believers advancing in the knowledge of God and faithfulness to him as if they were children growing up. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "you may mature in your faith" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to salvation (ULT)**

**until the time when God saves you completely {from this sinful world (UST)}**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **salvation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "until you are saved" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**to salvation (ULT)**

**until the time when God saves you completely {from this sinful world (UST)}**

Here, **salvation** refers to when Jesus returns and God completes the **salvation** of his people. Peter also uses this meaning for **salvation** in [1:5](#). See how you translated this word there. Alternate translation: "until God saves you completely" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## ULT

<sup>2</sup> **as** newborn **babies**, long for the **pure** rational milk so that by it you may grow up to **salvation**,

## UST

<sup>2</sup> **Just as** newborn **babies strongly desire their mothers' pure milk**, so you should strongly desire **to learn true things about God**, so that by {learning} them you may become spiritually mature. {You must do this} **until the time when God saves you completely {from this sinful world}**.

## Translation Words - ULT

- as
- babies
- pure
- salvation

## Translation Words - UST

- Just as
- babies strongly desire their mothers' pure milk
- to learn true things about God
- until the time when God saves you completely...from this sinful world

## 1 Peter 2:3

**if you have tasted (ULT)**  
**You must do this} because you have**  
**experienced (UST)**

Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might misunderstand and think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you can translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: “since you have tasted” (See: [Connect — Factual Conditions](#) )

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> if you have tasted that the [Lord](#) {is} kind,

### UST

<sup>3</sup> {You must do this} because you have experienced that the [Lord](#) acts very kindly {toward you}.

**if you have tasted (ULT)**  
**You must do this} because you have experienced (UST)**

Peter uses **tasted** figuratively to refer to personally experiencing something. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “if you have experienced” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you have tasted that the Lord {is} kind (ULT)**  
**you have experienced that the Lord acts very kindly {toward you (UST)**

This clause is a paraphrase of [Psalm 34:8](#). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)



## **1 Peter 2:4**

**coming to him (ULT)****You have come to the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here, **coming** could indicate: (1) a factual statement, as in the UST.  
 (2) a command, in which case “being built up” in the next verse would also be a command. Alternate translation: “Come to him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to him (ULT)****to the Lord Jesus (UST)**

The pronoun **him** refers to Jesus, who is called “Lord” in the previous verse. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “to Jesus” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**coming to him, a living stone (ULT)****You have come to the Lord Jesus. {He is like} a stone {that is part of a building, but he is} alive (UST)**

Peter refers to Jesus figuratively as if he were a **stone** in a building. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or with a simile. Alternate translation: “coming to him, who is like a living stone in a building” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a living stone (ULT)****He is like} a stone {that is part of a building, but he is} alive (UST)**

Peters speaks of a **stone** figuratively as if it were **living**. This could refer to: (1) a stone that is alive. This interpretation emphasizes the fact that Jesus is alive even though he had died. Alternate translation: “a stone that lives” (2) a stone that gives life. This interpretation emphasizes the fact that Jesus gives eternal life to everyone who believes in him. Alternate translation: “a stone that gives eternal life to others” (See: [Personification](#))

**having been rejected by men**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “one that men have rejected” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by men (ULT)****people (UST)**

Although the term **men** is masculine, Peter is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: “by people” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**but chosen by God (ULT)****Although...God chose him (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “but that God has chosen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> coming to him, a **living** stone, **having been rejected** by men, but **chosen** by God, **precious**,

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> You have come to the Lord Jesus. {He is like} a stone {that is part of a building, but **he is} alive. Although people rejected him, God chose him and greatly values him.**



## Translation Words - ULT

- living
- having been rejected
- chosen
- God
- precious

## Translation Words - UST

- he is} alive
- Although...God
- rejected him
- chose him
- and greatly values him



## **1 Peter 2:5**

**you yourselves, like living stones, are being built up {to be} a spiritual house (ULT)  
you are like stones that are alive. {Like men build houses with stones,} God is joining you together like a building in which his Spirit dwells (UST)**

Peter uses **stones** figuratively to refer to his readers, people who believe in Jesus. Just as people in the Old Testament used **stones** to build the temple that God dwelled in, God is using believers to bring together a group of people in whom he will dwell. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “you, like stones that are put together and built into a house, are living stones that are being brought together into a spiritual community in which God dwells” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## ULT

<sup>5</sup> and you yourselves, [like living](#) stones, are being built up {to be} a [spiritual house](#), for a [holy priesthood](#) to offer the [spiritual sacrifices](#) acceptable [to God](#) through [Jesus Christ](#).

## UST

<sup>5</sup> And you [are like](#) stones [that are alive](#). {Like men build houses with stones,} God is joining you together [like a building in which his Spirit dwells](#). {He is also making you} [be like priests whom he has set apart](#) in order to do [spiritual acts](#) that please [him](#) by means of [Jesus the Messiah](#).

**yourselves, like living stones (ULT)  
you are like stones that are alive (UST)**

Peters uses **stones** figuratively as if they were **living**. This emphasizes the fact that Peter’s readers have eternal life because they believe in Jesus. In this verse, **living** cannot mean to give life, because only God can give life. Alternate translation: “like stones that live” (See: [Simile](#))

**you...are being built up {to be} a spiritual house (ULT)  
Like men build houses with stones,} God is joining you together like a building in which his Spirit dwells (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that God is building up as a spiritual house” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**you...are being built up {to be (ULT)  
Like men build houses with stones,} God is joining you together (UST)**

Here, **are being built up** could indicate: (1) a factual statement, as in the UST. (2) a command, in which case “coming to him” in the previous verse would also be a command. Alternate translation: “be built up” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**for a holy priesthood to offer the spiritual sacrifices (ULT)  
He is also making you} be like priests whom he has set apart in order to do spiritual acts (UST)**

Here Peter speaks of believers figuratively as if they were part of a **priesthood** and as if their good deeds and acts of worship were **sacrifices** offered to God. Just as the priests in the Old Testament offered sacrifices to God, so should believers do good deeds and worship God. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or with a synonym. Alternate translation: “like the holy priesthood that offered sacrifices to God, so you are made into a group which does good spiritual deeds” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## for a holy priesthood (ULT)

### He is also making you} be like priests whom he has set apart (UST)

The word **priesthood** is a singular noun that refers to a group of priests. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: “a group of holy priests” (See: [Collective Nouns](#))

## the spiritual sacrifices acceptable (ULT)

### spiritual acts that please (UST)

This could mean: (1) the **sacrifices** are of a spiritual, rather than physical, nature. Alternate translation: “the sacrifices of a spiritual nature that are acceptable” (2) the **sacrifices** are offered by the power of the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: “the sacrifices offered by the power of the Holy Spirit, which are acceptable” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- like
- living
- Christ
- spiritual
- spiritual
- a...house
- holy
- a...priesthood
- the...sacrifices
- to God
- Jesus

## Translation Words - UST

- are like
- that are alive
- the Messiah
- like a building
- in which his Spirit dwells
- spiritual
- like priests
- whom he has set apart
- acts
- him
- Jesus



## **1 Peter 2:6**

## it stands in scripture (ULT)

### What {Isaiah} wrote {that God said} in scripture (UST)

Here the quotation of **scripture** that occurs next in the verse is spoken of as if it were a person who **stands**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "it is written in scripture" (See: [Personification](#))

## it stands in scripture (ULT)

### What {Isaiah} wrote {that God said} in scripture (UST)

This phrase introduces a quotation of an Old Testament book ([Isaiah 28:16](#)). If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use a comparable phrase that indicates that Peter is quoting from an important text. Alternate translation: "what Isaiah wrote in scripture stands" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

## ULT

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, it stands in [scripture](#): "Behold, I am laying in [Zion](#) a stone, a [cornerstone](#), [chosen](#), [precious](#). And the one [believing](#) in him may certainly not [be ashamed](#)."

## UST

<sup>6</sup> What {Isaiah} wrote {that God said} in [scripture](#) shows us that this is true: "Pay attention! I am placing in [Jerusalem](#) [someone who is like the most important stone in the building](#). I have [chosen him](#), [he is very valuable](#), and [anyone who trusts](#) in him will surely never [be humiliated](#)."

**Behold, I am laying in Zion a stone, a cornerstone, chosen, precious. And the one believing in him may certainly not be ashamed (ULT)**

**Pay attention! I am placing in Jerusalem someone who is like the most important stone in the building. I have chosen him, he is very valuable, and anyone who trusts in him will surely never be humiliated (UST)**

This sentence is a quotation from [Isaiah 28:16](#). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

## Behold (ULT)

### Pay attention (UST)

Peter quotes Isaiah using **Behold** to call his readers to pay attention to what he is about to say. Your language may have a similar expression that you can use here. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## I am laying (ULT)

### I am placing (UST)

In this quotation from the Old Testament, **I** refers to God. If this is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "I, God, lay" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

## a stone, a cornerstone (ULT)

### someone who is like the most important stone in the building (UST)

Here God refers to the Messiah figuratively as if he were not only a **stone**, but even the most important **stone** in a building, the **cornerstone**. If this might confuse your readers, you could use a simile or express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "someone who is like the most important stone in a building" (See: [Metaphor](#))



**a stone, a cornerstone, chosen, precious (ULT)**  
**someone who is like the most important stone in the building. I have chosen him, he is very valuable (UST)**

Here, **chosen** and **precious** show a distinction between this **cornerstone** and any other **cornerstone**. If this is not understood in your language, you can make the relationship between these phrases more clear. Alternate translation: "a cornerstone that is chosen and precious" (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

**certainly not (ULT)**  
**surely never (UST)**

The phrase **certainly not** translates two negative words in Greek. God uses them together to emphasize the truth of this statement. If your language can use two negatives together for emphasis without them cancelling each other to create a positive meaning, it would be appropriate to use that construction here. (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [scripture](#)
- [Zion](#)
- [a cornerstone](#)
- [chosen](#)
- [precious](#)
- [believing](#)
- [may...be ashamed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [scripture](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [someone who is like the most important stone in the building](#)
- [I have chosen him](#)
- [he is very valuable](#)
- [anyone who trusts](#)
- [will...be humiliated](#)



## 1 Peter 2:7

## the honor {is (ULT) God} will honor (UST)

Here, **this honor** refers to the statement in the previous verse that people who believe in Jesus will “certainly not be ashamed.” If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “this honor of never being ashamed is” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## the honor {is (ULT) God} will honor (UST)

The phrase translated **this honor** could also be translated as “precious,” in which case it would refer to the “cornerstone” in the previous verse. Alternate translation: “he is precious” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, the [honor {is}](#) to you, the [ones who believe](#). But [to those who do not believe](#), “The stone that the ones who build [rejected](#), this has become [the head of the corner](#)”—

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, [{God} will honor](#) you [who believe in Jesus](#). However, [those who refuse to believe in him](#) {are like the builders that someone wrote about in the Psalms}: “The stone that the builders [rejected](#) has become [the most important stone in the building](#).”

## But to those who do not believe (ULT) However, those who refuse to believe in him (UST)

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a clause would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “But to those who do not believe, God says in the scriptures” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

## The stone that the ones who build rejected, this has become the head of the corner (ULT) are like the builders that someone wrote about in the Psalms}: “The stone that the builders rejected has become the most important stone in the building (UST)

This sentence is a quotation from [Psalm 118:22](#). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

## The stone that the ones who build rejected (ULT) are like the builders that someone wrote about in the Psalms}: “The stone that the builders rejected (UST)

The author uses **stone** figuratively to refer to the Messiah, and he uses **builders** figuratively to refer to those who **rejected** Jesus. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a simile. Alternate translation: “The Messiah who was rejected just like builders reject a stone” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## **the head...of the corner (ULT)**

## **the most important stone in the building (UST)**

This phrase has the same meaning as “cornerstone” in the previous verse. It refers to the most important stone in a building. Here it refers specifically to the Messiah. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the Messiah, who is like a cornerstone” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [honor {is](#)
- [ones who believe](#)
- [to those who do not believe](#)
- [rejected](#)
- [the head](#)
- [the head...of the corner](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [God} will honor](#)
- [who believe in Jesus](#)
- [those who refuse to believe in him](#)
- [rejected](#)
- [the most important stone in the building](#)
- [the most important stone in the building](#)



## **1 Peter 2:8**

## and (ULT)

### Isaiah} also {wrote in the Scriptures that the Messiah would be like (UST)

Here, **and** introduces a quotation of an Old Testament book ([Isaiah 8:14](#)). If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use a comparable phrase that indicates that Peter is quoting from an important text. Alternate translation: “and Isaiah wrote in the scriptures” (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

## A stone of stumbling and a rock of offense (ULT)

### a stone that causes people to stumble, and a rock that offends people (UST)

This sentence is a quotation from [Isaiah 8:14](#). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

## A stone of stumbling and a rock of offense (ULT)

### a stone that causes people to stumble, and a rock that offends people (UST)

Peter quotes Isaiah speaking figuratively of the Messiah as if he were a **stone** or **rock** that people tripped over. Peter means that many people would be offended by Jesus’ teachings and reject him. If your readers would not understand this, you could use a simile or express the meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternative translation: “He is like a stone of stumbling and like a rock of offense” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## A stone of stumbling and a rock of offense (ULT)

### a stone that causes people to stumble, and a rock that offends people (UST)

Peter quotes Isaiah using the possessive form twice in this sentence to describe a **stone** that causes **stumbling** and a **rock** that causes **offense**. If this is not clear in your language, you could use express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “A stone that makes people stumble and a rock that makes people feel offended” (See: [Possession](#))

## A stone of stumbling and a rock of offense (ULT)

### a stone that causes people to stumble, and a rock that offends people (UST)

These two phrases mean almost the same thing. Isaiah says the same thing twice, in slightly different ways, to emphasize that people will be offended by this **stone**. If stating the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: “a stone or a rock over which people will surely stumble” (See: [Parallelism](#))

## ULT

<sup>8</sup> and, “A stone of stumbling and a rock of offense.” They stumble, disobeying the word—to which also they were appointed.

## UST

<sup>8</sup> {Isaiah} also {wrote in the Scriptures that the Messiah would be like}, “a stone that causes people to stumble, and a rock that offends people.” {Just as people become injured because they trip over a rock,} people become offended because they disobey God’s message; that is what God determined to happen to them.



**the word (ULT)****God's message (UST)**

Here, **the word** refers to the gospel message, which includes the command to repent and believe the gospel. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the message about Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**They stumble (ULT)****Just as people become injured because they trip over a rock,} people become offended (UST)**

Here, **stumble** could refer to: (1) being offended by the gospel, which is the meaning in the rest of this verse. Alternate translation: "They get offended" (2) being judged for rejecting the gospel. Alternate translation: "They are judged" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**They stumble, disobeying the word (ULT)****Just as people become injured because they trip over a rock,} people become offended because they disobey God's message (UST)**

Here, **disobeying the word** indicates the reason why they **stumble**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "They stumble because they disobey the word" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**disobeying the word (ULT)****because they disobey God's message (UST)**

Here, **disobeying** refers to **disobeying** the command to repent and believe the gospel, which is part of the gospel message. Therefore, this **disobeying** means refusing to believe the gospel. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "refusing to believe the word" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to which also they were appointed (ULT)****that is what God determined to happen to them (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "to which God also appointed them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to which (ULT)****that is what God determined to happen to them (UST)**

Here, **which** refers back to the previous part of this sentence. Those who do not believe in Jesus were appointed to stumble and disobey the word. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "To this, stumbling and disobeying the word," (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [A stone of stumbling](#)

- of stumbling
- stumble
- disobeying
- word
- they were appointed

## Translation Words - UST

- a stone that causes people to stumble
- that causes people to stumble
- Just as people become injured because they trip over a rock...people become offended
- because they disobey
- God's message
- that is what God determined to happen to them



## **1 Peter 2:9**

**a chosen family, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for possession (ULT)**  
**are people whom God has chosen {for himself}. {You are} like a group of priests {who worship God} and rule {with him}. {You are} a people group that God has set apart {for himself}. {You are} a people who belong to God (UST)**

All four of these phrases are quotations from the Old Testament. The phrase **a chosen people** is from [Isaiah 43:20](#), **a royal priesthood** and **a holy nation** are from [Exodus 19:6](#), and **a people for possession** is from [Isaiah 43:21](#). It may be helpful for your readers to indicate these quotations with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate quotations. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**a chosen family (ULT)**  
**are people whom God has chosen {for himself (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “a family whom God has chosen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**a royal priesthood (ULT)**  
**You are} like a group of priests {who worship God} and rule {with him (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) members of a priesthood who are also members of the king's family. Alternate translation: “a kingly priesthood” (2) a priesthood which serves the king. Alternate translation: “a priesthood which serves the king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**a royal priesthood (ULT)**  
**You are} like a group of priests {who worship God} and rule {with him (UST)**

The word **priesthood** is a singular noun that refers to a group of priests. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: “a group of royal priests” (See: [Collective Nouns](#))

**a people for possession (ULT)**  
**You are} a people who belong to God (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **possession**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “a people for God to possess” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## ULT

<sup>9</sup> But you {are} a **chosen** family, a royal **priesthood**, a **holy nation**, a **people** for **possession**, so that **you might proclaim** the praiseworthy actions of the one **who called** you out of **darkness** into his **marvelous light**,

## UST

<sup>9</sup> In contrast {to them}, you {believers} are people whom **God has chosen {for himself}**. {You are} like a group of **priests {who worship God}** and rule {with him}. {You are} a **people group that God has set apart {for himself}**. {You are} a **people who belong to God** so that **you might declare** the praiseworthy things he has done. He **has called** you out of **your former manner of living, when you were sinful and ignorant about God**, and he has made you **understand** the **wonderful true things about him**.

**of the one who called you out of darkness into his marvelous light (ULT)**  
**He has called you out of your former manner of living, when you were sinful and ignorant about God, and he has made you understand the wonderful true things about him (UST)**

This clause refers to God. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “of God, who called you from darkness into his marvelous light” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**out of darkness...into his marvelous light (ULT)**  
**out of your former manner of living, when you were sinful and ignorant about God...and he has made you understand the wonderful true things about him (UST)**

Here, **darkness** refers figuratively to the condition of people who do not know God and are sinful, and **light** refers figuratively to the condition of people who know God and are righteous. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use similes. Alternate translation: “from a life of sin and ignorance of God to a life of knowing and pleasing him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [chosen](#)
- [a...priesthood](#)
- [light](#)
- [holy](#)
- [a...nation](#)
- [a people](#)
- [possession](#)
- [you might proclaim](#)
- [who called](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [marvelous](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [God has chosen {for himself](#)
- [You are} like a group of priests {who worship God](#)
- [understand...wonderful true things about him](#)
- [You are} a people group](#)
- [that God has set apart {for himself](#)
- [You are} a people](#)
- [who belong to God](#)
- [you might declare](#)
- [has called](#)
- [your former manner of living, when you were sinful and ignorant about God](#)
- [understand...wonderful true things about him](#)

## 1 Peter 2:10

**not a people...the people of God...who had  
“not received mercy...you have “received  
mercy (ULT)**

**no people group at all...God’s people group...  
At one time “God had...not...acted mercifully  
toward you...he has acted mercifully toward  
you (UST)**

All four of these phrases are quotations from the Old Testament (Hosea 1:6–10). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate these quotations with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate quotations. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> who once {were} “not [a people](#),” but now “[the people of God](#),” the ones [who had](#) “not [received mercy](#),” but now [you have](#) “[received mercy](#).”

### UST

<sup>10</sup> {What Hosea wrote is true about you,} who used to be “no [people group at all](#),” but now are “[God’s people group](#).” [At one time](#) “[God had](#) not [acted mercifully toward you](#),” but now, “[he has acted mercifully toward you](#).”

## Translation Words - ULT

- [a people](#)
- [the people of God](#)
- [of God](#)
- [who had...received mercy](#)
- [you have “received mercy](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [people group at all](#)
- [God’s people group](#)
- [God’s](#)
- [At one time “God had...acted mercifully toward you](#)
- [he has acted mercifully toward you](#)





## **1 Peter 2:11**

## General Information:

Peter begins to tell his readers how to live Christian lives.

### foreigners and exiles (ULT) foreigners {whose real home is in heaven (UST)

Here, **foreigners** and **exiles** mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize that Christians on this earth are far away from their home in heaven. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “true exiles” (See: [Doublet](#))

### foreigners (ULT) foreigners {whose real home is in heaven (UST)

Peter uses **foreigners** here figuratively to refer to his Christian readers. Just like a foreigner is not in his homeland, so are Christians not at home while living on the earth. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a simile. Alternate translation: “those living away from their home in heaven” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### exiles (ULT) foreigners...whose real home is in heaven (UST)

See how you translated this word in [1:1](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to abstain from fleshly desires (ULT) not to do the things that your sinful human natures want to do (UST)

Here, **fleshly** refers figuratively to a person's sinful nature. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “to abstain from satisfying your sinful desires” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### make war against the soul (ULT) will destroy you (UST)

Peter speaks of **fleshly desires** figuratively as if they were soldiers trying to destroy the spiritual life of believers. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a simile. Alternate translation: “will destroy your spiritual life” (See: [Personification](#))

### the soul (ULT) you (UST)

Peter is referring to each individual Christian to whom he is writing this letter, not one particular **soul**. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: “your souls” or “you” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Beloved ones, I exhort you as foreigners and exiles to abstain from fleshly desires, which make war against the soul,

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Fellow believers whom I love, you are like foreigners {whose real home is in heaven}. So I urge you not to do the things that your sinful human natures want to do. Those desires will destroy you.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Beloved ones
- I exhort you
- as
- exiles
- fleshly
- from...desires
- make war
- soul

## Translation Words - UST

- Fellow believers whom I love
- you are like
- foreigners...whose real home is in heaven
- So I urge you
- things...want to do
- that your sinful human natures
- will destroy
- you



## **1 Peter 2:12**

## keeping your behavior among the Gentiles good (ULT)

## Behave well among those who do not know God (UST)

Peter is using a statement to give a command. If this is confusing in your language, you can use a more natural form for command, starting a new sentence. Alternate translation: "Keep your behavior among the Gentiles good" (See: [Statements — Other Uses](#) )

## keeping your behavior among the Gentiles good (ULT)

## Behave well among those who do not know God (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **behavior**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "behaving well among the Gentiles" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## among the Gentiles (ULT)

## among those who do not know God (UST)

Peter uses **Gentiles** here figuratively to refer to people who are not Christians. Just like a **Gentile** was not a member of the Jewish people, so people who are not Christians are not members of God's people. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a simile. Alternate translation: "among those who do not believe in Jesus" or "among those who are not Christians" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## your...among...whatever they slander...as (ULT)

## Behave...among...the things you are doing that they falsely say are evil (UST)

Alternate translation: "with regard to what they slander you for as " or "with respect to the very things that they slander you for as"

## by observing {your} good works (ULT)

## they will see that you are {actually} doing good things (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **works**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "they may observe the good things that you do" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## in the day of visitation (ULT)

## when he comes to judge everyone (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **visitation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "on the day when he visits" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> keeping your behavior among the **Gentiles good** so that, in whatever they slander you **as evildoers**, by observing {your} **good works**, they might glorify God in **the day** of visitation.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Behave **well** among those **who do not know God** in order that, concerning **the things you are doing that they falsely say are evil**, they will see **that you are {actually} doing good things and they will honor God when** he comes to judge everyone.

## **in the day of visitation (ULT)**

### **when he comes to judge everyone (UST)**

This phrase is an idiom that refers to the time when God will judge all people. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “on the day when he comes to judge everyone” (See: [Idiom](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- Gentiles
- good
- good
- as
- evildoers
- your...works
- they might glorify
- God
- the day

### **Translation Words - UST**

- well
- that you are...actually} doing good things
- who do not know God
- when
- the things you are doing that they falsely say are evil
- the things you are doing that they falsely say are evil
- that you are...actually} doing good things
- and they will honor
- God

## 1 Peter 2:13

### for the sake of the Lord (ULT)

### In order to honor the Lord Jesus (UST)

Here, **the Lord** refers to Jesus. This phrase could mean: (1) we should do this to follow the example of Jesus, who also obeyed human authorities. Alternate translation: "in order to follow the Lord's example" (2) we should do this to honor Jesus. Alternate translation: "in order to honor the Lord" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### to a king as one having supreme authority (ULT)

### the king, because he has the greatest {human} power (UST)

Alternate translation: "to the king as the highest human authority" or "to the king, who has supreme human authority"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Be subjected to](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [to a king](#)
- [as](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [obey](#)
- [the king](#)
- [because he has the greatest {human} power](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> [Be subjected to](#) every human authority for the sake of the [Lord](#), whether [to a king as](#) one having supreme authority,

### UST

<sup>13</sup> In order to honor the [Lord Jesus](#), [obey](#) everyone who has power {to govern people}. This includes [the king](#), [because he has the greatest {human} power](#).





## 1 Peter 2:14

**to governors, as those being sent through him (ULT)**  
**governors, because the king has sent them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to governors, who have been sent through him"

**those being sent through him (ULT)**  
**because the king...has sent them (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "whom the king has sent" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**those being sent through him (ULT)**  
**because the king...has sent them (UST)**

Here, **him** could refer to: (1) the king mentioned in the previous verse, as in the UST. (2) God, who is the one who installs and removes all governing authorities. Alternate translation: "those being sent by God" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**for punishment of evildoers and praise of those who do good (ULT)**  
**to punish those who do evil things and to praise those who do good things (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **punishment** and **praise**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: "to punish evildoers and praise those who do good" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [to governors](#)
- [as](#)
- [those being sent](#)
- [of evildoers](#)
- [praise](#)
- [of those who do good](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [governors](#)
- [because the king](#)
- [has sent them](#)
- [those who do evil things](#)
- [to praise](#)
- [those who do good things](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> or [to governors, as those being sent](#) through him, for punishment of [evildoers](#) and [praise of those who do good](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> It also includes [governors, because the king has sent them](#) to punish [those who do evil things](#) and [to praise those who do good things](#).

## 1 Peter 2:15

### doing good to silence the ignorance of foolish people (ULT)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases. Alternate translation: “to silence the ignorance of foolish people by doing good” (See: [Information Structure](#))

### doing good to silence the ignorance of foolish people (ULT)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **ignorance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “doing good to silence the ignorant things that foolish people are saying” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- will of God
- of God
- doing good
- foolish

### Translation Words - UST

- what...God...wants
- God
- He wants you} to do good things
- fools...who do not know God

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> For this is the will of God: doing good to silence the ignorance of foolish people,

### UST

<sup>15</sup> {Obey those who govern people} because this is what God wants: {He wants you} to do good things in order to stop fools {who do not know God} from being able to ignorantly say that you have done evil things.

## 1 Peter 2:16

### as free people (ULT)

### Obey those who govern people} as people who are free to do so voluntarily (UST)

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. These words could be: (1) the command to submit to authorities stated in [verse 13](#). Alternate translation: "submit as free people" (2) an implied imperative verb. Alternate translation: "act as free people" or "live as free people" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### as a covering...of evil (ULT)

### to hide...evil deeds (UST)

Here, **covering** could refer to: (1) something to prevent people from knowing about one's evil deeds. Alternate translation: "as a way to prevent others from seeing your evil" (2) an excuse or pretext to do evil deeds. Alternate translation: "as an excuse to do evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> as free people and not having freedom as a covering of evil, but as servants of God.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> {Obey those who govern people} as people who are free to do so voluntarily, but do not try to use your status as free people to hide evil deeds. Instead, {obey} as those who serve God should.

## Translation Words - ULT

- as
- as (2)
- as (3)
- free people
- freedom
- of evil
- servants
- of God

## Translation Words - UST

- Obey those who govern people} as
- to hide (2)
- obey} as...should (3)
- people who are free to do so voluntarily
- your status as free people
- evil deeds
- those who serve
- God

## 1 Peter 2:17

### the brotherhood (ULT) all {your} fellow believers (UST)

Here, **brotherhood** refers to all Christian believers. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly.  
Alternate translation: “the community of believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Honor
- Honor
- Love
- brotherhood
- Fear
- God
- king

#### Translation Words - UST

- Be respectful to
- Be respectful to
- Love
- fellow believers
- Revere
- God
- king

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Honor everyone. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honor the king.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> Be respectful to everyone. Love all {your} fellow believers. Revere God. Be respectful to the king.

# 1 Peter 2:18

## General Information:

Peter begins to speak specifically to people who were slaves who worked in people's houses.

**to the good and gentle ones (ULT)**  
**to those {masters} who act very kindly toward you (UST)**

The words **good** and **gentle** mean similar things. Peter uses this repetition to emphasize that such masters treat their servants very kindly. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "to the very kind ones" (See: [Doublet](#))

**to the crooked ones (ULT)**  
**to those who act unjustly toward you (UST)**

Here, **crooked ones** is used figuratively to refer to people who act dishonestly or unjustly as if their morals were an object that could be bent or twisted. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "to the dishonest ones" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## ULT

<sup>18</sup> House slaves, be subjected to {your} masters with all fear, not only to the good and gentle ones, but also to the crooked ones.

## UST

<sup>18</sup> You household slaves {who are believers}, submit to your masters with a completely reverent attitude. {Do this} not only to those {masters} who act very kindly toward you, but also to those who act unjustly toward you.

## Translation Words - ULT

- House slaves
- be subjected
- to...your} masters
- fear
- to...good
- to...crooked ones

## Translation Words - UST

- You household slaves...who are believers
- submit
- to...masters
- a...reverent attitude
- who act unjustly toward you
- who act very kindly toward you

## 1 Peter 2:19

**this {finds...favor (ULT)**

**this is...something that God favors (UST)**

Peter assumes that his readers will know that he is referring to finding **favor** with God, which is what he states in the next verse. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: “this is deserving of God’s favor” or “this is pleasing to God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**because of consciousness of God (ULT)**

**because that person is aware of who God is {and what he wants (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **consciousness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “because one is aware of God” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**because of consciousness of God (ULT)**

**because that person is aware of who God is {and what he wants (UST)**

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **consciousness** that is about or concerning **God**. If this is not clear in your language, you could use a different expression. Alternate translation: “because of having consciousness about God” (See: [Possession](#))

**of God (ULT)**

**who God is {and what he wants (UST)**

Here, **God** refers to who **God** is and what he requires from his people. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “because of consciousness of who God is and what he requires” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- endures
- suffering
- consciousness
- of God

### Translation Words - UST

- someone endures
- and suffers
- that person is aware of
- who God is {and what he wants

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> For this {finds} favor: If anyone endures sorrows, suffering unjustly because of consciousness of God.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> {Submit to your masters} because this is something that God favors: if someone endures hardships and suffers undeservedly because that person is aware of who God is {and what he wants}.





## **1 Peter 2:20**

**For what credit {is there} if, sinning and being beaten, you will endure (ULT)**

**Submit to your masters} because there is certainly no honor for you if you endure when someone beats you because you have sinned (UST)**

Peter is not asking for information, but is using the question form here to emphasize that there is nothing praiseworthy about suffering for doing something wrong. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate this sentence as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "For there is no credit if, sinning and being beaten, you will endure." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**being beaten (ULT)**

**Submit to your masters} because there is certainly no honor for you if you endure when someone beats you because you have sinned (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "someone beats you" or "your master beats you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**doing good and suffering (ULT)**

This could mean: (1) someone suffers even though that person did what is good. Alternate translation: "suffering despite doing good" (2) someone suffers because that person did what is good. Alternate translation: "suffering because of doing good" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**this {finds} favor with God (ULT)**

**this is something that God favors (UST)**

See how you translated a similar phrase in the previous verse.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [sinning](#)
- [being beaten](#)
- [you will endure](#)
- [you will endure](#) (2)
- [doing good](#)
- [suffering](#)
- [God](#)

## ULT

<sup>20</sup> For what credit {is there} if, [sinning](#) and [being beaten](#), [you will endure](#)? But if [doing good](#) and [suffering](#), [you will endure](#), this {finds} favor with [God](#).

## UST

<sup>20</sup> {[Submit to your masters](#)} because [there is certainly no honor for you if you endure when someone beats you because you have sinned](#). However, this is something that God favors: if [you endure when you suffer even though you did what is good](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- Submit to your masters} because there is certainly no honor for you if you endure when someone beats you because you have sinned
- you endure (2)
- Submit to your masters} because there is certainly no honor for you if you endure when someone beats you because you have sinned
- Submit to your masters} because there is certainly no honor for you if you endure when someone beats you because you have sinned
- is something that God favors
- when you suffer
- even though you did what is good

## 1 Peter 2:21

### to this (ULT)

### to suffer while doing what is good (UST)

Here, **this** refers back to what Peter stated at the end of the previous verse. Believers are called by God to endure suffering while doing what is good. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “to endure suffering when you have done what is good” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### to this...you were called (ULT)

### to suffer while doing what is good...he has called you (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God has called you to this” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### you might follow in his footsteps (ULT)

### you would imitate what he did (UST)

Peter uses **follow in his footsteps** figuratively to refer to following Jesus’ example about enduring suffering. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “you might imitate his behavior” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- you were called
- Christ
- suffered

## Translation Words - UST

- he has called you
- the Messiah
- suffered

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> For to this [you were called](#), because [Christ](#) also [suffered](#) on your behalf, leaving an example for you so that you might follow in his footsteps;

### UST

<sup>21</sup> {God favors this} because [he has called you](#) to suffer while doing what is good. {He has called you to this} because [the Messiah](#) also [suffered](#) for your sake in order to be an example for you in order that you would imitate what he did.

## 1 Peter 2:22

**who did no sin, neither was deceit found in his mouth (ULT)**

**He never sinned. And he never said anything to deceive people (UST)**

This verse is a quotation from [Isaiah 53:9](#). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> "who did no [sin](#), neither was [deceit](#) found in his mouth;"

### UST

<sup>22</sup> "He [never sinned](#). And he never said [anything to deceive people](#)."

**neither was deceit found in his mouth (ULT)**

**And he never said anything to deceive people (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "neither did anyone find deceit in his mouth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**neither was deceit found in his mouth (ULT)**

**And he never said anything to deceive people (UST)**

Peter quotes Isaiah referring to **deceit** figuratively as if it were an object that could be found inside someone's mouth. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "neither was deceit spoken out of his mouth" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**neither was deceit found in his mouth (ULT)**

**And he never said anything to deceive people (UST)**

Peter quotes Isaiah figuratively describing something the Messiah would say by association with **his mouth**, which he would use to say something. In this case it is something the Messiah did not say. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "neither did he say something deceitful" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#)
- [deceit](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [never sinned](#)
- [anything to deceive people](#)

## 1 Peter 2:23

**who being reviled, did not revile back (ULT)**  
**When people insulted him, he never insulted them in return (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "whom people reviled, did not revile them back" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**he entrusted {himself...to the one who judges justly (ULT)}**  
**he trusted God...to prove that he was innocent...who always judges rightly (UST)**

Here, **the one who judges justly** refers to God. This means that Jesus trusted God to punish those who reviled him or to prove that he was innocent. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "he entrusted himself to God, who judges justly" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- suffering
- he entrusted {himself
- who judges
- justly

### Translation Words - UST

- When he suffered
- he trusted God...to prove that he was innocent
- who always judges rightly
- who always judges rightly

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> who being reviled, did not revile back; suffering, he did not threaten, but he entrusted {himself} to the one who judges justly;

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> When people insulted him, he never insulted them in return. When he suffered, he never threatened {those who caused him to suffer}. Instead, he trusted God, who always judges rightly, {to prove that he was innocent}.





## 1 Peter 2:24

## who himself bore our sins (ULT) The Messiah himself was punished for our sins (UST)

Peter uses the word **himself** here to emphasize that Jesus alone is the one who bore our sins. Use a way that is natural in your language to indicate this emphasis. Alternate translation: “none other than Jesus bore our sins” or “Jesus, that very person, bore our sins” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

## our sins...bore...in his body on the tree (ULT) for our sins...was punished...in his body {when he died} on the cross (UST)

Peter uses **bore our sins** figuratively to refer to Jesus being punished for **our sins** as if **sins** were an object that he carried on **his body**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “suffered the punishment for our sins in his body on the tree” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## the tree (ULT) when he died} on the cross (UST)

Peter uses **tree** figuratively to refer to the cross on which Jesus died, which was made of wood. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language, as in the UST. (See: [Metonymy](#))

## having died to sins (ULT) because we are no longer controlled by sin (UST)

Here, **having died to sins** is a metaphor that means to no longer be controlled by sin. Like a dead person is free from sinning because they are no longer alive, so believers are free to stop sinning because Jesus bore the punishment for their sins. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “being no longer controlled by sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## having died to sins (ULT) because we are no longer controlled by sin (UST)

This clause refers to an event that occurs before the event in the next clause. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could show this relationship by using a fuller phrase. Alternate translation: “after having died to sins” (See: [Connect — Sequential Time Relationship](#))

## we might live for righteousness (ULT) we would live rightly (UST)

When Peter says **we**, he is speaking of himself and other believers in Christ, so **we** would be inclusive. Your language may require you to mark this form. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> who himself bore our sins in his body on the tree so that, having died to sins, we might live for righteousness, by whose wounds you were healed.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> The Messiah himself was punished for our sins in his body {when he died} on the cross in order that we would live rightly because we are no longer controlled by sin. God has healed you because people wounded him.

**by whose wounds you were healed (ULT)**  
**God has healed you because people wounded him (UST)**

This clause is a quotation from [Isaiah 53:5](#). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**by whose wounds you were healed (ULT)**  
**God has healed you because people wounded him (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God has healed you by means of his wounds" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by whose wounds (ULT)**  
**because people wounded him (UST)**

Here, **wounds** figuratively refers to all the suffering Jesus endured when he was beaten and killed on the cross. If our readers would misunderstand this, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "by whose suffering and death" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**you were healed (ULT)**  
**God has healed you (UST)**

Here, **healed** could mean: (1) being freed from the penalty and power of sin, which could include physical healing. Alternate translation: "you were freed from the effects of sin" (2) being forgiven for their sins and having a restored relationship with God. Alternate translation: "you were forgiven" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [bore](#)
- [sins](#)
- [to sins](#)
- [body](#)
- [we might live](#)
- [for righteousness](#)
- [you were healed](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [was punished](#)
- [for...sins](#)
- [by sin](#)
- [body](#)
- [we would live](#)
- [rightly](#)
- [God has healed you](#)



## 1 Peter 2:25

**you were...like straying sheep (ULT)**  
**you were {alienated from God...like sheep that had become lost (UST)**

Peter speaks figuratively about his readers before they believed in Christ as if they had been similar to lost sheep that were wandering around aimlessly. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "you were living aimlessly without knowing God" (See: [Simile](#))

**you have been turned back (ULT)**  
**God has brought...back (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God has turned you back" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the shepherd and overseer of your souls (ULT)**  
**you...Jesus, who cares for you and watches over you {as a shepherd cares for his sheep (UST)**

Peter uses **shepherd** and **overseer** figuratively to refer to Jesus. Just as a **shepherd** protects his sheep and an **overseer** takes care of his workers, Jesus protects and takes care of those who trust in him. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the one who protects and takes care of your souls" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of your souls (ULT)**  
**you...Jesus, who cares for you and watches over you...as a shepherd cares for his sheep (UST)**

See how you translated this phrase in 1:9. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- like
- straying
- sheep
- you have been turned back
- shepherd
- overseer
- of...souls

**Translation Words - UST**

- like
- sheep
- that had become lost
- God has brought...back
- you...Jesus, who cares for you and watches over you...as a shepherd cares for his sheep

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> For you were like straying sheep, but now you have been turned back to the shepherd and overseer of your souls.

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> {God healed you} because you were {alienated from God} like sheep that had become lost, but now God has brought you back to Jesus, who cares for you and watches over you {as a shepherd cares for his sheep}.

- you...Jesus, who cares for you and watches over you...as a shepherd cares for his sheep
- you...Jesus, who cares for you and watches over you...as a shepherd cares for his sheep

## 1 Peter 3

### 1 Peter 3 General Notes

#### Structure and Formatting

How believers should act toward other people (2:11–3:12)

How believers should endure suffering (3:13–4:6)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in [verses 10–12](#).

#### Other Possible Translation Difficulties in this Chapter

##### “the spirits in prison”

[Verse 19](#) states that Jesus went and proclaimed to “the spirits in prison,” but does not mention what Jesus proclaimed or who those spirits are. [Verse 20](#) states that these spirits disobeyed God during the time of Noah. Many scholars think that this means one of the following three meanings, each of which will be discussed in the notes for [verses 19](#) and [20](#): (1) The spirits are demons who were imprisoned by God because they did something evil during Noah’s time (see [2 Peter 2:4–5](#); [Jude 6–7](#); [Genesis 6:1–4](#)). [Verse 19](#) then means that Jesus went to the place where they are imprisoned and proclaimed his victory to them at some time between his death on the cross and his return to heaven. (2) The spirits are sinful human beings who died during the flood in Noah’s time, and the prison is the realm of the dead. [Verse 19](#) then means that Jesus went to hell and proclaimed his victory to those dead people there at some time between his death and resurrection. (3) The spirits are sinful human beings who died during the flood in Noah’s time, but [verse 19](#) refers to the pre-incarnate form of Jesus indirectly preaching the gospel to them through the preaching of Noah.

##### “Baptism now saves you”

In [verse 20](#) Peter refers to the story of God rescuing Noah and his family from the flood “through water.” Then in [verse 21](#) he states that the water is an “antitype” for baptism, which is a Christian ritual by which a person publicly identifies as a Christian. Then Peter makes the statement that baptism “now saves you.” Since the New Testament authors repeatedly state that God alone saves people and that no one can do any work to be saved, Peter’s statement cannot mean that a person can be saved by being baptized. Rather, Peter uses the word “baptism” figuratively to refer to the faith in Jesus that a person publicly confesses when that person is baptized. Peter indicates later in [verse 21](#) that he is not referring to water baptism, which he describes as “the removal of dirt from the flesh.” Peter further states that the baptism he is referring to saves “through the resurrection of Jesus Christ,” which means that a person is saved by faith in Jesus, because Jesus rose from the dead.





## 1 Peter 3:1

## General Information:

In [verses 1–6](#) Peter gives instructions specifically to women who are wives.

### some are being disobedient to the word (ULT) any husbands who do not believe the message {about the Messiah (UST)}

Here, **being disobedient to the word** could refer to: (1) refusing to believe the gospel message, as in [2:8](#). Alternate translation: “some do not believe the message about Jesus” (2) disobeying the commands God gave in his word. Alternate translation: “some do not obey what God commands in his word” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they will be won (ULT) you may persuade...to become believers (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “you will win them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they will be won (ULT) you may persuade...to become believers (UST)

Here, **won** is an idiom that means that the unbelieving husbands will become believers in Jesus. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: “they will be persuaded to believe in Christ” (See: [Idiom](#))

### without a word (ULT) without you saying anything to them (UST)

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a clause would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “without you saying a word.” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### without a word (ULT) without you saying anything to them (UST)

Here, **word** refers to anything the wives might say to their husbands about the gospel message. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “without a word about the gospel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Similarly](#)
- [be subjected](#)
- [are being disobedient](#)
- [to...word](#)

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> [Similarly](#), wives, [be subjected](#) to your own husbands so that even if some [are being disobedient](#) to the [word](#), they will be won without a word, through the behavior of {their} wives,

## UST

<sup>1</sup> [In a similar way](#), you women {who are believers}, [submit](#) to your husbands. {Do this} in order that you may persuade any husbands [who do not believe](#) the [message {about the Messiah}](#) to become believers without you saying anything to them.

## Translation Words - UST

- In a similar way
- submit
- who do not believe
- message {about the Messiah

## 1 Peter 3:2

### having observed (ULT)

**They will believe in the Messiah} because they see that (UST)**

This phrase indicates the reason why the unbelieving husbands would become believers in Jesus. These husbands became believers because they **observed** how their wives behaved. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “because they observed” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> having observed your [pure](#) behavior with [fear](#),

### UST

<sup>2</sup> {They will believe in the Messiah} because they see that you behave [sincerely](#) and {[act](#)} [reverently](#) {[toward them](#)}.

### your pure behavior with fear (ULT)

**you behave sincerely and {act} reverently {toward them (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **behavior**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “you behave purely and with fear” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### behavior...your pure...behavior (ULT)

**and {act} reverently {toward them...you behave sincerely (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) the wives’ sincere and honest behavior. Alternate translation: “your sincere behavior” (2) the wives’ sexually chaste behavior. Alternate translation: “your sexually chaste behavior” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [pure](#)
- [fear](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [sincerely](#)
- [and...act](#)} [reverently](#)...[toward them](#)

## 1 Peter 3:3

### whose (ULT)

### your (UST)

Here, **whose** refers to the Christian wives to whom Peter is speaking. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “your” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

### whose...adornment (ULT)

### your...make...beautiful (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **adornment**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “the way you adorn yourselves” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of gold jewelry
- of fine clothing

### Translation Words - UST

- gold jewelry
- fine clothes

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> whose adornment, let be not the outward braiding of hair and wearing of gold jewelry or wearing of fine clothing,

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Do not make the outside of your bodies beautiful by having fancy hairstyles or by wearing gold jewelry or fine clothes.



## 1 Peter 3:4



**but the hidden man of the heart (ULT)**  
**Instead, make your unseen mind beautiful (UST)**

If it would be helpful in your language, you could begin this verse as a new sentence. If you do so, then you will need to repeat the subject and verb from the previous verse. Alternate translation: "Rather, let your adornment be the inner man of the heart" (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#) )

**the hidden man of the heart (ULT)**  
**make your unseen mind beautiful (UST)**

Here, **hidden man** and **heart** both refer to a person's thoughts or emotions. If this would confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the inner thoughts" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the hidden man of the heart (ULT)**  
**make your unseen mind beautiful (UST)**

Peter is using the possessive form to indicate that the **hidden man** is the same thing as **the heart**. If this is not clear in your language, you could use express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "the hidden man, which is the heart" or "the hidden man, namely, the heart" (See: [Possession](#))

**in the imperishable thing of a gentle and quiet spirit (ULT)**  
**in a way that will never fade. I mean, have a humble and peaceful attitude (UST)**

Peter is using the possessive form to indicate that the **imperishable thing** is the same thing as **a gentle and quiet spirit**. If this is not clear in your language, you could use express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "in the imperishable thing, which is a gentle and quiet spirit" or "in the imperishable thing, namely, a gentle and quiet spirit" (See: [Possession](#))

**of a gentle and quiet spirit (ULT)**  
**I mean, have a humble and peaceful attitude (UST)**

Here, **quiet** means "peaceful" or "calm." It does not mean the opposite of loud. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "of a gentle and peaceful spirit" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of a gentle and quiet spirit (ULT)**  
**I mean, have a humble and peaceful attitude (UST)**

Here, **spirit** refers to a person's attitude or temperament. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "of a gentle and quiet attitude." (See: [Metonymy](#))

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> but the hidden man of the **heart**, in the imperishable thing **of a** gentle and quiet **spirit**, which is **very precious** before **God**.

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> Instead, **make your unseen mind beautiful** in a way that will never fade. I mean, have a humble and peaceful **attitude**. This is **something that God values very much**.

**which is very precious before God (ULT)****This is something that God values very much (UST)**

Peter refers to God's opinion figuratively as if it were a person standing directly in front of him. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "which God considers to be very precious" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of...heart](#)
- [of a...spirit](#)
- [very precious](#)
- [God](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [make your unseen mind beautiful](#)
- [attitude](#)
- [something that God values very much](#)
- [something that God values very much](#)

## 1 Peter 3:5

### adorned themselves (ULT) made themselves beautiful (UST)

Peter speaks figuratively of the attitude of the holy women as if it were something with which they **adorned themselves**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly.  
Alternative translation: "made themselves beautiful" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### being subjected to their own husbands (ULT) submitted to their husbands (UST)

See how you translated the similar clause in [verse 1](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#)
- [ones hoping](#)
- [God](#)
- [being subjected](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [who lived holy lives](#)
- [trusted](#)
- [God](#)
- [submitted](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For in this manner also the [holy](#) women, the [ones hoping](#) in [God](#), formerly adorned themselves, [being subjected](#) to their own husbands,

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> {Do this} because this is the way that the women [who lived holy lives](#) long ago made themselves beautiful. They [trusted](#) in [God](#) and [submitted](#) to their husbands.



## 1 Peter 3:6

**Sarah...Abraham (ULT)****Sarah...her husband Abraham (UST)**

**Sarah** is the name of a woman and **Abraham** is the name of her husband. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**whose children you have become (ULT)****God will consider you to be her daughters (UST)**

Peter uses a Hebrew idiom here in which people are said to be the **children** of someone who has qualities similar to theirs. Women who believe and who act like Sarah acted are thought of as if they were her actual **children**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a simile. Alternate translation: "who resemble her as if you were her children" (See: [Idiom](#))

**not being afraid of any terror (ULT)****are not afraid of anything terrible happening to you (UST)**

The phrase **not being afraid of any** translates two negative words in Greek. Peter uses them together to emphasize that believing women should not fear anything at all. If your language can use two negatives together for emphasis without them cancelling each other to create a positive meaning, it would be appropriate to use that construction here. (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- like
- Sarah
- obeyed
- Abraham
- calling
- lord
- children
- doing what is good
- being afraid
- of...terror

**Translation Words - UST**

- Sarah
- for example
- obeyed
- Abraham
- and called
- her} master
- God will consider you to be her daughters
- if you do good deeds
- are...afraid of
- terrible happening to you

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> like Sarah obeyed Abraham, calling him "lord," whose children you have become, doing what is good and not being afraid of any terror.

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> Sarah, for example, obeyed her husband Abraham and called him {her} master. God will consider you to be her daughters if you do good deeds and are not afraid of anything terrible happening to you.



## 1 Peter 3:7



## General Information:

In this verse Peter gives instructions specifically to men who are husbands.

### live with...the female (ULT) dwell together...with your wives (UST)

Here, **the female** refers to the wives of the men to whom Peter is writing, not to one particular woman. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: "live with the women whom you have married" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### according to knowledge (ULT) in an understanding manner (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **knowledge**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "in a knowledgeable way" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### as with a weaker container (ULT) Treat them} as {you would treat} someone who is weaker {than you are (UST)

Here Peter refers to women figuratively as if they were **weaker** containers. The word **container** is a term used to refer to both men and women in the Bible ([Acts 9:15](#)). Just as clay pots can break easily, so are human beings weak. Here Peter specifically refers to women as **weaker** containers because women are usually physically weaker than men. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "as with someone who is weaker than you are" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### assigning honor as also fellow heirs of the grace of life (ULT) Honor them as those who will also receive God's gracious gift with you, which is eternal life (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **honor** and **heirs**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: "honor them as also those who will inherit with you the grace of life" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### fellow heirs of the grace of life (ULT) those who will...receive God's gracious gift with you, which is eternal life (UST)

Peter speaks of **the grace of life** figuratively as if it were something that people inherit. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a simile. Alternate translation: "those who will experience the grace of life together" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## ULT

<sup>7</sup> Husbands, [similarly](#), live with the female according to [knowledge](#), [as](#) with a weaker container, assigning [honor as](#) also [fellow heirs of the grace of life](#), so that your [prayers](#) will not be hindered.

## UST

<sup>7</sup> You men {who are believers}, [in a similar way](#), dwell together with your wives in [an understanding manner](#). {Treat them} as {you would treat} someone who is weaker {than you are}. [Honor them as those who will also receive God's gracious gift with you, which is eternal life.](#) {Do this} so that nothing will hinder you [from praying](#).

**of the grace of life (ULT)****God's gracious gift...which is eternal life (UST)**

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **grace** that is **life**. The word **grace** refers to a gracious gift and **life** refers to eternal **life**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "of the gracious gift, namely, eternal life" (See: [Possession](#))

**so that your prayers will not be hindered (ULT)****Do this} so that nothing will hinder you from praying (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so that nothing will hinder your prayers" (See: [Active](#) or [Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [similarly](#)
- [as](#)
- [as \(2\)](#)
- [knowledge](#)
- [honor](#)
- [fellow heirs](#)
- [of the grace](#)
- [of life](#)
- [prayers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [in a similar way](#)
- [Treat them} as](#)
- [as \(2\)](#)
- [an understanding manner](#)
- [from praying](#)
- [Honor them](#)
- [those who will...receive...with you](#)
- [God's gracious gift](#)
- [which is eternal life](#)

## 1 Peter 3:8

### General Information:

In [verses 8–12](#) Peter writes instructions to all believers.

**be} likeminded (ULT)**  
**have the same mindset {among yourselves (UST)**

Alternate translation: “have the same opinion and be” or “have the same attitude and be”

**loving as brothers (ULT)**  
**Love each other as fellow believers (UST)**

Although **brothers** is masculine, Peter is using the phrase **loving as brothers** in a generic sense to refer to the kind of love that all believers should have for other believers. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “loving as fellow believers” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sympathetic](#)
- [loving as brothers](#)
- [humble](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Be sympathetic {toward each other](#)
- [Love each other as fellow believers](#)
- [Be humble](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now finally, everyone {be} likeminded, [sympathetic](#), [loving as brothers](#), tenderhearted, [humble](#);

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> To end {this part of my letter}, {I say to} all of you, have the same mindset {among yourselves}. [Be sympathetic {toward each other}](#). [Love each other as fellow believers](#). Act compassionately {toward each other}. [Be humble](#).



## 1 Peter 3:9

**not paying back evil in exchange for evil or  
insult in exchange for insult (ULT)**  
**When people do evil things to you or insult  
you, do not do the same to them (UST)**

Peter uses **paying back** figuratively to refer to responding to the actions of another person as if one was returning money to that person for those actions. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “not doing evil to someone who does evil to you or insulting someone who insults you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**blessing (ULT)**  
**bless them (UST)**

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a clause would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from earlier in the verse. Alternate translation: “blessing those who do evil to you or insult you” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**to this you were called (ULT)**  
**because that is what...God has chosen you to do (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God called you to this” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to this you were called so that (ULT)**  
**because that is what...God has chosen you to do in order that (UST)**

Here, **this** could refer to: (1) **blessing** earlier in the verse. Alternate translation: “you were called to bless so that” (2) **inherit a blessing** later in the verse “to this you were called so that” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**so that you might inherit a blessing (ULT)**  
**in order that he may bless you (UST)**

Peter speaks of experiencing God’s **blessing** figuratively as if one is receiving an inheritance. If this might confuse your readers, you could express it plainly. Alternate translation: “so that you might experience God’s blessing as your permanent possession” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- evil
- evil
- blessing
- a blessing
- you were called
- you might inherit

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> not paying back **evil** in exchange for **evil** or insult in exchange for insult, but on the contrary, **blessing**, because to this **you were called** so that **you might inherit a blessing**.

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> **When people do evil things to you** or insult you, **do not do the same to them**. Instead, **bless them**, because that is what **God has chosen you to do** in order that **he may bless you**.

## Translation Words - UST

- do not do the same to them
- When people do evil things to you
- bless them
- he may bless you
- God has chosen you to do
- he may bless you





## **1 Peter 3:10**

**For (ULT)**

**We know that this is true} because, {as David wrote (UST)**

**For** here introduces a quotation from the Old Testament ([Psalm 34:12-16](#)). If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use a comparable phrase that indicates that Peter is quoting from an important text. Alternate translation: "It is as David wrote in the scriptures" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

**the one...Let...wanting to love life and to see good days stop (ULT)**

**As for those...who truly want to enjoy good lives, they must not (UST)**

From this clause through to the end of [verse 12](#), Peter quotes from [Psalm 34:12-16](#). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**the one...wanting to love life and to see good days (ULT)**

**As for those...who truly want to enjoy good lives (UST)**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the desire to have a good life. If stating the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: "the one truly wanting to have a good life" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**to see good days (ULT)**

**who truly want to enjoy good lives (UST)**

Peter quotes David speaking figuratively of experiencing a good lifetime as **seeing good days**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "to experience a good lifetime" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**his} tongue from evil and {his} lips from speaking deceit (ULT)**

**say evil things or speak deceitful things (UST)**

Peter quotes David using the words **tongue** and **lips** figuratively to refer to the person who is speaking. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language. Alternate translation: "himself from speaking evil and from speaking deceit" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**his} tongue from evil and {his} lips from speaking deceit (ULT)**

**say evil things or speak deceitful things (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **evil** and **deceit**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: "his tongue from saying evil things and his lips from speaking deceitful things" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> For, "Let the one wanting to love life and to see good days stop {his} tongue from evil and {his} lips from speaking deceit.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> {We know that this is true} because, {as David wrote,} "As for those who truly want to enjoy good lives, they must not say evil things or speak deceitful things.

## Translation Words - ULT

- to love
- life
- good
- days
- his} tongue
- evil
- deceit

## Translation Words - UST

- who truly want to enjoy good lives
- who truly want to enjoy good lives
- who truly want to enjoy good lives
- who truly want to enjoy good lives
- say
- evil things
- deceitful things

## 1 Peter 3:11

**let him turn away...from evil (ULT)**

**They must...refuse...to do evil (UST)**

Here, **turn away from** is a metaphor that means to avoid doing something. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "let him avoid doing evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Let him seek peace and let him pursue it (ULT)**

**They must diligently strive to have peaceful relationships with other people (UST)**

The phrases **seek peace** and **pursue it** mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize the importance of living peacefully with other people. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "Let him earnestly pursue peace" (See: [Doublet](#))

**Let him seek peace (ULT)**

**They must diligently strive to have peaceful relationships with other people (UST)**

Here, **peace** refers to peaceful relationships between people. If it might be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "Let him seek to live peacefully with others" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- let him turn away
- evil
- good
- Let him seek
- peace

### Translation Words - UST

- They must...refuse
- to do evil
- what is good {instead
- They must diligently strive to have peaceful relationships with other people
- They must diligently strive to have peaceful relationships with other people

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But let him turn away from evil and let him do good. Let him seek peace and let him pursue it,

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> They must also refuse to do evil, and do what is good {instead}. They must diligently strive to have peaceful relationships with other people.



## **1 Peter 3:12**

## the eyes of the Lord {are} on righteous ones (ULT)

### the Lord watches over righteous people (UST)

Here, **eyes** being **on** someone is an idiom that refers to God acting favorably toward someone by taking care of that person. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a similar idiom in your language. Alternate translation: "The Lord lovingly takes care of the righteous ones" (See: [Idiom](#))

## his ears {are} toward their request (ULT)

### He listens {and responds} to the prayers of righteous people (UST)

Here, **ears** being **toward** someone's **request** is an idiom that refers to God listening to that person's request. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a similar idiom in your language. Alternate translation: "the Lord listens to their request" (See: [Idiom](#))

## his ears {are} toward their request (ULT)

### He listens {and responds} to the prayers of righteous people (UST)

The idea that the Lord listens to the requests of righteous people also implies that he responds to those requests. If this might be helpful to your readers, you could state this explicitly. Alternate translation: "he listens to and grants their request" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## their request (ULT)

### the prayers of righteous people (UST)

Here, **request** refers to requests in general, not to one particular **request**. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: "their requests" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

## But the face of the Lord {is} against (ULT)

### But he opposes (UST)

Here, **face** refers figuratively to the Lord himself. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "But the Lord is against" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## But the face of the Lord {is} against (ULT)

### But he opposes (UST)

Here, **the face** being **against** someone is an idiom that refers to one person opposing another person. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a similar idiom in your language. Alternate translation: "But the Lord opposes" (See: [Idiom](#))

## ULT

<sup>12</sup> for the eyes [of the Lord](#) {are} on [righteous ones](#), and his ears {are} toward their [request](#). But [the face of the Lord](#) {is} against those doing [evil](#)."

## UST

<sup>12</sup> {They must do these things} because [the Lord watches over righteous people](#). He listens {and responds} to [the prayers](#) of righteous people. [But he opposes](#) people who do [evil](#)."

## **those doing evil (ULT)**

## **people who do evil (UST)**

After this phrase, Peter also ends his quotation from the book of Psalms. If you decided in [verse 10](#) to mark this as a quotation, indicate that ending here with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate the end of a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [of the Lord](#)
- [of the Lord](#) (2)
- [righteous ones](#)
- [request](#)
- [the face](#)
- [evil](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [the Lord watches over](#)
- [But he opposes](#) (2)
- [righteous people](#)
- [the prayers](#)
- [But he opposes](#)
- [evil](#)



# 1 Peter 3:13

## Connecting Statement:

In [verses 13–22](#) Peter teaches the believers how to behave when unbelievers persecute them.

**who {is} the one who will harm you if you become zealous ones of the good (ULT)**  
**It is unlikely that anyone will harm you if you are eager to do what is good (UST)**

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And who {is} the one who will harm you if you become [zealous ones](#) of the [good](#)?

### UST

<sup>13</sup> [It is unlikely that anyone will harm you if you are eager to do what is good.](#)

Peter is not asking for information, but is using the question form here to emphasize that it is unlikely that someone would harm them if they did good things. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “no one will harm you if you become zealous ones of the good” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**zealous ones of the good (ULT)**  
**It is unlikely that anyone will harm you if you are eager to do what is good (UST)**

Peter is using the possessive form to describe people who are **zealous** about doing **good** deeds. If this is not clear in your language, you could use a different expression. Alternate translation: “ones zealous to do good deeds” (See: [Possession](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [zealous ones](#)
- [of...good](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [It is unlikely that anyone will harm you if you are eager to do what is good](#)
- [It is unlikely that anyone will harm you if you are eager to do what is good](#)



## 1 Peter 3:14

**you might suffer because of righteousness (ULT)**  
**you suffer because you did what was right (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **righteousness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “you might suffer because you do what is right” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**you are} blessed ones (ULT)**  
**God will bless you (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God will cause you to be blessed ones” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**But, you should not fear the fear of them, nor be troubled (ULT)**

This sentence is a quotation from [Isaiah 8:12](#). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**But, you should not fear the fear of them, nor be troubled (ULT)**

These two phrases mean the same thing. Peter states the same idea twice in order to emphasize that believers should not be afraid of people who persecute them. If stating the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: “But you should not fear at all what people might do to you” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**the...you should not fear...fear of them (ULT)**  
**the...Do not be afraid of...things that other people fear (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) the fear that unbelievers have. Alternate translation: “you should not fear what they fear” or “you should not fear the same things that they fear” (2) the fear that righteous people have for unbelievers. Alternate translation: “you should not fear them” (See: [Possession](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [you might suffer](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [you are} blessed ones](#)
- [fear](#)
- [you should...fear](#)
- [be troubled](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [you suffer](#)
- [you did what was right](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> But even if [you might suffer](#) because of [righteousness](#), [{you are} blessed ones](#). But, [you should](#) not [fear](#) the [fear](#) of them, nor [be troubled](#).

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> However, even if [you suffer](#) because [you did what was right](#), [God will bless you](#). “Do not [be afraid of](#) or [troubled by](#) the [things that other people fear](#).”

- God will bless you
- things that other people fear
- Do...be afraid of
- troubled by



## **1 Peter 3:15**

## the Lord...sanctify...Christ in your hearts (ULT) Lord...acknowledge in your minds that the... Messiah is holy (UST)

Peter uses **sanctify the Lord Christ** figuratively to refer to acknowledging Christ's holiness. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "acknowledge in your hearts that the Lord Christ is holy" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## in your hearts (ULT) in your minds that (UST)

Here, **hearts** refers to the thoughts or emotions of Peter's readers. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "in your minds" or "within yourselves" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## for a defense (ULT) to answer (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **defense**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "to defend your faith" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## who asks you for a word (ULT) who asks you to tell them...what (UST)

Peter uses **word** figuratively to refer to an answer or explanation spoken by using words. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "who asks you for a statement" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## concerning the hope in you (ULT) about...you are confidently expecting {God to do for you (UST)

Peter speaks of **hope** figuratively as if it were something that could be inside a person. If this would confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "concerning your hope" or "concerning the hope that you have" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [sanctify](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [hope](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [acknowledge...is holy](#)

## ULT

<sup>15</sup> But [sanctify the Lord Christ](#) in your [hearts](#), always ready for a defense to everyone who asks you for a word concerning the [hope](#) in you,

## UST

<sup>15</sup> Instead, [acknowledge](#) in your [minds](#) that the [Lord Messiah is holy](#). Always be ready to answer anyone who asks you to tell them about what you [are confidently expecting {God to do for you}](#).



- minds that
- Lord
- Messiah
- are confidently expecting {God to do for you



## **1 Peter 3:16**

## **with meekness and fear (ULT) humbly and reverently (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **meekness** and **fear**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: “by being meek and fearful” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## **having a good conscience (ULT) while not doing any wicked thing (UST)**

This phrase implies not doing anything sinful that would cause a person to not have a **good conscience**. If this might confuse your readers, you could state this explicitly. Alternate translation: “doing nothing wrong” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## **so that in what you are being slandered, the ones who are reviling your good behavior in Christ may be ashamed (ULT) in order that God may shame those who despise the good things you do as people united with the Messiah. {God will shame them} regarding the very things they are speaking falsely against you (UST)**

If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of these clauses. Alternate translation: “so that the ones who are reviling your good behavior in Christ may be ashamed about why you are being slandered” (See: [Information Structure](#))

## **you are being slandered (ULT) very things they are speaking falsely against you (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people are slandering you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## **your good behavior in Christ (ULT) the good things you do as people united with the Messiah (UST)**

Here, **in Christ** refers to being a Christian. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “your good behavior as a Christian” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## **the ones who are reviling your good behavior in Christ may be ashamed (ULT) God may shame those who despise the good things you do as people united with the Messiah (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God may shame the ones who are reviling your good behavior in Christ” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **ULT**

<sup>16</sup> but with meekness and **fear**, having a **good conscience**, so that in what you are being slandered, the ones who are reviling your **good** behavior **in Christ** **may be ashamed**.

### **UST**

<sup>16</sup> But {answer them} **humbly and reverently while not doing any wicked thing** in order that **God may shame** those who despise **the good things you do as people united with the Messiah**. {God will shame them} regarding the very things they are speaking falsely against you.

## Translation Words - ULT

- fear
- good
- good
- a...conscience
- in Christ
- Christ
- may be ashamed

## Translation Words - UST

- humbly and reverently
- while not doing any wicked thing
- while not doing any wicked thing
- the good things you do as people united with the Messiah
- God may shame
- the good things you do as people united with the Messiah
- the good things you do as people united with the Messiah

## 1 Peter 3:17

**doing good...doing evil (ULT)**  
**is...because you did what...good...to suffer}**  
**because you did what is evil (UST)**

These two phrases indicate two different reasons for suffering. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "because of doing good ... because of doing evil" (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

**if the will of God wills (ULT)**  
**if God wants {you to suffer} (UST)**

Peter uses **the will of God** figuratively to refer to God himself. If your readers would not understand this, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "if God wills" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> For{it is} better [to suffer doing good](#), if the [will of God](#) wills, than [doing evil](#).

### UST

<sup>17</sup> {Do these things} because, if [God wants {you to suffer}](#), it is better [for you to suffer because you did what is good](#) than [{to suffer} because you did what is evil](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [to suffer](#)
- [doing good](#)
- [will of God](#)
- [of God](#)
- [doing evil](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [God wants...you to suffer](#)
- [God wants...you to suffer](#)
- [for you to suffer](#)
- [is...because you did what...good](#)
- [to suffer} because you did what is evil](#)



## **1 Peter 3:18**



## for sins (ULT) for the sake of {other people's} sins (UST)

Here, **sins** implies the **sins** of people other than Jesus, because Jesus never sinned. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “for the sake of the sins of others” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## having been killed...in the flesh (ULT) Although people killed him...Although people killed him (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people having killed him in the flesh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## having been killed...in the flesh (ULT) Although people killed him...Although people killed him (UST)

Here, **flesh** refers to Christ's body, which was made of **flesh**. Peter is saying that the body of Christ was killed. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “having been killed physically” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## having been made alive...in the spirit (ULT) God's Spirit caused him to become alive again...God's Spirit caused him to become alive again (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God's spirit having made him alive” or “God having made him alive in the spirit” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## having been made alive...in the spirit (ULT) God's Spirit caused him to become alive again...God's Spirit caused him to become alive again (UST)

Here, **the spirit** could refer to: (1) the Holy Spirit, in which case this phrase would indicate the means by which Jesus was made alive. Alternate translation: “having been made him alive by the Spirit” (2) Jesus' spiritual existence, in which case this phrase would be referring to the spiritual realm that is in contrast to the physical realm referred to with the phrase “in the flesh.” Alternate translation: “having been made alive spiritually” or “having been made alive in the spiritual realm” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [suffered](#)
- [having been killed](#)
- [sins](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> For [Christ](#) also [suffered](#) once for [sins](#) —a [righteous one](#) on behalf of [unrighteous ones](#)—so that he might bring you [to God](#), [having been killed in the flesh](#), but having been made alive [in the spirit](#),

### UST

<sup>18</sup> {This is true} because [the Messiah](#) also [suffered](#). {[He suffered](#)} one time for the sake of {[other people's](#) [sins](#)}. [He was a righteous person](#) {who died} for the benefit of [unrighteous people](#). {He died} in order to enable you to be with [God](#). [Although people killed him](#), [God's Spirit caused him to become alive again](#).

- a righteous one
- unrighteous ones
- to God
- in the flesh
- in the spirit

## Translation Words - UST

- the Messiah
- suffered. {He suffered
- Although people killed him
- other people's} sins
- He was a righteous person
- unrighteous people
- God
- Although people killed him
- God's Spirit caused him to become alive again



## **1 Peter 3:19**

## in which (ULT) The Spirit...enabled him (UST)

Here, **which** refers to “the spirit” in the previous verse. As in the previous verse, this could refer to: (1) the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: “by means of the Spirit” (2) Jesus’ spiritual existence. Alternate translation: “in the spiritual realm” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## he proclaimed (ULT) and announce {God’s victory} (UST)

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. This phrase could mean: (1) Jesus proclaimed God’s victory over sin and death, which he accomplished through his death and resurrection. Alternate translation: “he proclaimed God’s victory” (2) Jesus preached the gospel to wicked people indirectly through the preaching of Noah during the time before the great flood. This interpretation is less likely to be correct, because it would mean that Noah was actually the one preaching and Peter does not mention Noah preaching or Jesus’ pre-incarnate existence anywhere in this letter. Alternate translation: “he preached the gospel” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

## to the spirits in prison (ULT) to the {evil} spirits whom God had imprisoned (UST)

Here, **spirits** could refer to: (1) evil spirits whom God imprisoned because of what they did before the flood that occurred in Noah’s time (see [2 Peter 2:4–5](#); [Jude 6–7](#); [Genesis 6:1–4](#)), as in the UST. (2) the spirits of people who died during the flood that occurred in Noah’s time. This interpretation is a less likely to be correct because Peter never refers to people as **spirits**, but rather “souls,” as in the next verse. Alternate translation: “to those people who had died and were in prison” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## in prison (ULT) to the...evil} spirits whom God had imprisoned (UST)

Here Peter uses **prison** as a metaphor. It could refer to: (1) a place where God imprisoned certain evil spirits whom he will judge when he judges the whole world (see [2 Peter 2:4–5](#); [Jude 6–7](#)). Alternate translation: “whom God had imprisoned to await judgment” (2) the place where sinful people go when they die. Alternate translation: “in hell” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he proclaimed](#)
- [to...spirits](#)
- [prison](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and announce {God’s victory}](#)
- [to the...evil} spirits whom God had imprisoned](#)
- [to the...evil} spirits whom God had imprisoned](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> in which also [he proclaimed](#), having gone to the [spirits](#) in [prison](#),

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> The Spirit also enabled him to go [and announce {God’s victory}](#) to the [{evil} spirits whom God had imprisoned](#).



## 1 Peter 3:20

## having disobeyed (ULT)

### Those evil spirits} disobeyed God (UST)

Peter is leaving out a word that a clause would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply the word from the context. Alternate translation: "having disobeyed God" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

## the patience of God (ULT)

### God...patiently {to see if people would stop doing what is evil (UST)

Peter uses **patience of God** figuratively to refer to God himself. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "God himself" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## in the days of Noah (ULT)

### during the lifetime of Noah (UST)

Here Peter uses **days of Noah** figuratively to refer to the time period when Noah was alive. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "in the time of Noah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## an ark being constructed (ULT)

### When Noah was building a big boat (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "when Noah was constructing an ark" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [having disobeyed](#)
- [patience](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the days](#)
- [of Noah](#)
- [an ark](#)
- [souls](#)
- [were rescued](#)
- [water](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Those evil spirits} disobeyed God](#)
- [during the lifetime of](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [a big boat](#)
- [God](#)
- [patiently {to see if people would stop doing what is evil](#)

## ULT

<sup>20</sup> [having disobeyed](#) formerly, when the [patience of God](#) was waiting in [the days of Noah](#), [an ark](#) being constructed, in which a few—that is, eight [souls](#)—[were rescued](#) through [water](#),

## UST

<sup>20</sup> [{Those evil spirits} disobeyed God](#) long ago, [during the lifetime of Noah](#). When Noah was building [a big boat](#), [God](#) waited [patiently {to see if people would stop doing what is evil}](#). {Only} a few people {were saved} in that boat. Specifically, [God brought](#) only eight [people safely](#) through [the waters {of the flood}](#).



- God brought...safely
- people
- the waters {of the flood



## 1 Peter 3:21

## which (ULT) That water (UST)

Here, **which** refers back to the “water” mentioned at the end of the last verse. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly, as in the UST. (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

## which, {being} an antitype, now saves you also, baptism (ULT)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of these phrases. Alternate translation: “which, being an antitype for baptism, now saves you also” (See: [Information Structure](#))

## which, {being} an antitype, now saves you also, baptism (ULT)

Here, **antitype** refers to one thing that is an analogy for another thing. In this context the “water” from the previous verse is an analogy for baptism. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “which is a symbol for baptism, now saves you also” or “which is analogous to baptism, now saves you also” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## baptism (ULT) the baptism (UST)

Here Peter uses **baptism** figuratively to refer to the faith in Jesus that believers profess when they are baptized. The Bible clearly states that God saves people by grace through faith, not by any work like baptism ([Ephesians 2:8–9](#)). See the discussion in the General Notes for this chapter. If this might confuse your readers, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “the faith in Jesus demonstrated by baptism” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## not a removal of dirt from the flesh, but an appeal of a good conscience to God (ULT)

## This baptism} does not wash dirt off of your bodies. Instead, it shows that we are asking...assure us that he has forgiven our sins...God...to (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **removal** and **appeal**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: “it does not remove dirt from the flesh, but appeals to God for a good conscience” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## from the flesh (ULT) your bodies (UST)

Here, Peter uses **flesh** figuratively to refer to a person’s physical body that is made of **flesh**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “from the body” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> which, {being} an antitype, now **saves** you also, **baptism**—not a removal of dirt from the flesh, but an appeal of a good conscience to God—through the resurrection of Jesus Christ,

### UST

<sup>21</sup> That water is a symbol that represents the baptism which now **saves** you. {This baptism} does not wash dirt off of your bodies. Instead, it shows that we are asking God to assure us that he has forgiven our sins. {This baptism saves you} by means of God having caused Jesus the Messiah to become alive again.

**an appeal of a good conscience to God (ULT)**

**it shows that we are asking...assure us that he has forgiven our sins...God...to (UST)**

Here the phrase **a good conscience** means Peter's readers do not feel guilty because they know that God has forgiven their sins. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "an appeal to God to know that your sins have been forgiven" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**you also...now saves...baptism—not a removal of dirt from the flesh, but an appeal of a good conscience to God—through the resurrection of Jesus Christ (ULT)**

Here, **through the resurrection of Jesus Christ** indicates the means by which the faith demonstrated by baptism saves. If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of these phrases to make that meaning clear. Alternate translation: "baptism now saves you also through the resurrection of Jesus Christ. It is not a removal of dirt from the flesh, but an appeal to God for a good conscience" (See: [Information Structure](#))

**through the resurrection of Jesus Christ (ULT)**

**God to...This baptism saves you} by means of...having caused Jesus the Messiah...become alive again (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **resurrection**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "through God raising Jesus Christ from the dead" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [saves](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [from the flesh](#)
- [of a...conscience](#)
- [good](#)
- [God](#)
- [the resurrection](#)
- [of Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the baptism](#)
- [which...saves](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [your bodies](#)
- [God to...having caused...become alive again](#)
- [assure us that he has forgiven our sins...to](#)
- [assure us that he has forgiven our sins...to](#)
- [God](#)
- [Jesus](#)



## **1 Peter 3:22**

**who is at the right hand of God, having gone into heaven, with angels and authorities and powers having been subjected to him (ULT)**  
**After God caused every evil and powerful spirit to submit to him, the Messiah went to heaven and is at the place of highest honor next to God (UST)**

The phrases **having gone** and **having been subjected** indicate that those two clauses describe events that occurred before the event in the first clause in this verse. If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of these phrases so that they appear in chronological order. Alternate translation: “after having gone into heaven, with angels and authorities and powers having been subjected to him, he is at the right hand of God” (See: [Information Structure](#))

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> who is at [the right hand of God](#), having gone into [heaven](#), with [angels](#) and [authorities](#) and [powers having been subjected](#) to him.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> After [God caused every evil and powerful spirit to submit](#) to him, the Messiah went to [heaven](#) and is at [the place of highest honor next to God](#).

**who is at the right hand of God (ULT)**  
**the Messiah...and is at the place of highest honor next to God (UST)**

Here, Peter uses **right hand** figuratively to refer to the place located at the right side of God in heaven. If this would confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “who is at God’s right side” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**who is at the right hand of God (ULT)**  
**the Messiah...and is at the place of highest honor next to God (UST)**

In this culture, the place at the **right** side of a ruler was a position of honor. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: “who is at the place of honor next to God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**with angels and authorities and powers having been subjected to him (ULT)**  
**After God caused every evil and powerful spirit to submit to him (UST)**

The words **angels**, **authorities**, and **powers** are all terms for the ranks of supernatural beings, both angelic and demonic. If your language does not have three different terms for rulers or authorities, you can combine them. Alternate translation: “all types of supernatural beings having been subjected to him” (See: [Doublet](#))

**with angels and authorities and powers having been subjected to him (ULT)**  
**After God caused every evil and powerful spirit to submit to him (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God having subjected angels and authorities and powers to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the right hand](#)
- [of God](#)



- heaven
- with angels
- authorities
- powers
- having been subjected

## Translation Words - UST

- After God caused...to submit
- every evil and powerful spirit
- every evil and powerful spirit
- every evil and powerful spirit
- heaven
- the place of highest honor next to
- God

## 1 Peter 4

### 1 Peter 4 General Notes

#### Structure and Formatting

How believers should endure suffering (3:13–4:6)

How believers should act because the end is near (4:7–11)

How believers should respond to trials (4:12–19)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in [verse 18](#).

#### Special Concepts in this Chapter

##### Ungodly Gentiles

Although the term “Gentiles” usually refers to people who are not Jewish, in [verse 3](#) Peter uses “Gentiles” to refer to all ungodly people who are not Jews. It does not include Gentiles who have become Christians. Actions like “licentiousness, lusts, drunkenness, carousing, drinking parties, and lawless idolatry” were typical of ungodly Gentiles. (See: [godly](#), [godliness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

#### Other Possible Translation Difficulties in this Chapter

##### “Let him” and “Let those”

In [verses 16–19](#) Peter uses these phrases to tell his readers what he wants them to do. Although they are commands that he wants his readers to obey, it is as if he were telling one person what he wants other people to do. If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate these as commands, like the UST does.



## 1 Peter 4:1

**Therefore (ULT)****Therefore (UST)**

**Therefore** here refers back to what Peter has said about Jesus' suffering in 3:18. If it might help your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "Considering what I have written about Christ's suffering" (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

**in the flesh...in the flesh (ULT)****physically...physically (UST)**

Here, **flesh** refers to the human body, which is made of flesh. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "in the body ... in the body" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**arm yourselves with the same way of thinking (ULT)****prepare yourselves {to suffer as Christians} by thinking {about suffering} the way that Jesus thought (UST)**

Here Peter uses **arm yourselves** figuratively to refer to preparing one's mind for something. As soldiers get their weapons ready for battle, so should Christians be mentally prepared to suffer for their faith. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a simile. Alternate translation: "prepare your minds with the same way of thinking" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**with the same way of thinking (ULT)****the way that Jesus thought (UST)**

Here Peter uses **the same way of thinking** to refer to Jesus' **way of thinking** when he suffered. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "with the same way of thinking about suffering that Christ had when he suffered" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**has ceased from sin (ULT)****are no longer involved in sin (UST)**

Here, **ceased from sin** means "no longer living with a sinful mindset." The idea is that suffering because of one's faith indicates that a person is not living sinfully. Christians are often persecuted by unbelievers because they refuse to act sinfully. This phrase does not mean that Christians who suffer never sin. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "has stopped living sinfully" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Christ
- having suffered
- who has suffered
- in the flesh
- in the flesh (2)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> Therefore, **Christ having suffered in the flesh**, also arm yourselves with the same **way of thinking**, for the one **who has suffered in the flesh** has ceased from sin

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> Therefore, **because the Messiah physically suffered**, prepare yourselves {to suffer as Christians} by thinking {about suffering} **the way that Jesus thought**. {Do this} because **those who physically suffer** are no longer involved in sin

- with...way of thinking
- from sin

## Translation Words - UST

- because...suffered
- those who...suffer
- the Messiah
- physically
- physically (2)
- the way that Jesus thought
- sin



## 1 Peter 4:2



## in order to (ULT) in order that (UST)

Here, **in order to** introduces a purpose clause. This could mean: (1) this verse states the purpose for ceasing from sin mentioned at the end of the previous verse. Alternate translation (without a comma preceding): “so that he will” (2) this verse states the purpose for the command to “arm yourselves” in the previous verse. Alternate translation (starting a new sentence): “Arm yourselves in order to” (See: [Connect — Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#) )

## the remaining...in the flesh...time (ULT) during the rest of their lives...of their lives (UST)

Peter uses **time in the flesh** figuratively to refer to a person's lifetime. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the remaining time of your life” or “the rest of your life” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## for the desires of men (ULT) the things that sinful people want to do (UST)

Here, **desires** refers specifically to sinful **desires**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “for the sinful desires of men” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## for the desires of men (ULT) the things that sinful people want to do (UST)

Although the term **men** is masculine, Peter is using the word here in a generic sense to refer to humans in general. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “for human desires” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- live
- time
- the flesh
- for the desires
- for the will of God
- of God

## Translation Words - UST

- the things that sinful people want to do
- of their lives
- of their lives
- of their lives
- they do the things that God wants them to do
- God

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> in order to no longer live the remaining time in the flesh for the desires of men, but for the will of God.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> in order that they do not do the things that sinful people want to do during the rest of their lives. Instead, they do the things that God wants them to do.



## 1 Peter 4:3

**is} enough...the time having passed (ULT)**  
**I say that to you} because you have already**  
**used too much of your lifetime...I say that to**  
**you} because you have already used too much**  
**of your lifetime (UST)**

Alternate translation: "enough time has passed"

**the will of the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**what the people who do not know God like to**  
**do (UST)**

Here Peter uses **Gentiles** figuratively to refer to sinful people who do not know God. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. See the discussion of this term in the General Notes for this chapter. Alternate translation: "the will of those people who do not know God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**having lived in licentiousness, lusts, drunkenness, carousing, drinking**  
**parties, and lawless idolatry (ULT)**  
**Like them,} you committed sexually immoral and lustful acts, got drunk,**  
**participated in immoral parties and drinking parties, and worshiped idols,**  
**which God has forbidden (UST)**

Peter speaks of these different sins figuratively as if they were places that his readers had formerly **lived in**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "having practiced licentiousness, lusts, drunkenness, carousing, drinking parties, and lawless idolatry" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**having lived in licentiousness, lusts, drunkenness, carousing, drinking**  
**parties, and lawless idolatry (ULT)**  
**Like them,} you committed sexually immoral and lustful acts, got drunk,**  
**participated in immoral parties and drinking parties, and worshiped idols,**  
**which God has forbidden (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **licentiousness, lusts, drunkenness, carousing,** and **idolatry**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: "having lived licentious and lustful lives, getting drunk, attending immoral parties and drinking parties, and worshiping prohibited idols" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)
- [of...Gentiles](#)
- [lusts](#)
- [drunkenness](#)
- [idolatry](#)

## ULT

<sup>3</sup> For the [time](#) having passed {is} enough to accomplish the will of the [Gentiles](#), having lived in licentiousness, [lusts](#), [drunkenness](#), carousing, drinking parties, and lawless [idolatry](#),

## UST

<sup>3</sup> {[I say that to you](#)} because you have already used too much of your lifetime doing what [the people who do not know God](#) like to do. {Like them,} you committed [sexually immoral and lustful acts](#), [got drunk](#), participated in immoral parties and drinking parties, and [worshiped idols](#), which God has forbidden.

## Translation Words - UST

- I say that to you} because you have already used too much of your lifetime
- the people who do not know God
- sexually immoral and lustful acts
- got drunk
- worshiped idols

## 1 Peter 4:4

**you are not running with them into the same  
outpouring of recklessness (ULT)  
you do not join with them {anymore} when  
they do these recklessly immoral things (UST)**

Peter uses **running into** figuratively to refer to being eager to participate in sinful acts with unbelievers. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "you are not eagerly joining them to participate in the same outpouring of recklessness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**outpouring of recklessness (ULT)  
when they do these recklessly immoral things  
(UST)**

Peter uses **outpouring** figuratively to refer to acting sinfully to such a high degree that it is as if sin were pouring out of the person like a flood. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "abundant acts of recklessness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of recklessness (ULT)  
when they do these recklessly immoral things (UST)**

The word **recklessness** refers to dangerous behavior that shows that a person does not care about the consequences of his actions. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "of careless sinning" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [reviling](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [As a result, they say bad things {about you}](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> in which they are surprised you are not running with them into the same outpouring of recklessness, [reviling](#);

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Regarding those things, people who don't know God are surprised that you do not join with them {anymore} when they do these recklessly immoral things. [As a result, they say bad things {about you}](#).

## 1 Peter 4:5

**they will give a word (ULT)**  
**One day} these people will have to admit...**  
**everything that they have done (UST)**

Here Peter uses **give** figuratively to refer to speaking something. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "they will speak a word" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they will give a word (ULT)**  
**One day} these people will have to admit...**  
**everything that they have done (UST)**

Here Peter uses **word** figuratively to refer to an explanation that they would speak using words. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "they will give an account" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to the one who is ready to judge (ULT)**  
**to God...He is the one who will judge (UST)**

Here, **the one who is ready to judge** could refer to: (1) God. Alternate translation: "to God, who is ready to judge" (2) Christ. Alternate translation: "to Christ, who is ready to judge" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**those who are living and dead ones (ULT)**  
**all people (UST)**

The phrase **living and dead ones** refers to all people, whether they are still alive or have died. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "everyone" (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to judge](#)
- [those who are living](#)
- [dead ones](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He is the one who will judge](#)
- [all people](#)
- [all people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> they will give a word to the one who is ready [to judge those who are living](#) and [dead ones](#).

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> {One day} these people will have to admit to God {everything that they have done}. [He is the one who will judge all people](#).





## 1 Peter 4:6

## the gospel was preached also to dead ones (ULT)

## people} preached the good news {about Jesus} to {believers who are now} dead (UST)

Here, **dead ones** refers to people who heard the gospel while they were alive but had died by the time Peter wrote this letter. Some people believe that this clause means that Jesus went to hell and preached the gospel to people who had died before Jesus himself died on the cross. However, that idea would contradict the statement in [Hebrews 9:27](#) that “men are appointed to die once, and after that, the judgment.” The Bible does not state that God gave anyone a second chance to believe in Jesus after they had already died. If this use of **dead ones** might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “the gospel was preached also to those who have since died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> For to this the gospel was preached also to dead ones, so that they might be judged in the flesh according to men, but they might live in the spirit according to God.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> This is the reason why {people} preached the good news {about Jesus} to {believers who are now} dead: in order that {those believers} who, although people judged them according to human {standards} during their lifetimes, by means of the Holy Spirit {now} live {forever} according to God's {standards}.

## the gospel was preached (ULT)

## people} preached the good news {about Jesus} (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) people preached the gospel. Alternate translation: “people preached the gospel” (2) Christ preached the gospel. Alternate translation: “Christ preached the gospel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## they might be judged...in the flesh according to men (ULT)

## people judged them...according to human {standards} during their lifetimes (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) men judged and persecuted them during their lives according to human standards. Alternate translation: “men judged them in the flesh by human standards” (2) God judged them as humans during their lives. Alternate translation: “God judged them in the flesh as humans” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## according to men (ULT)

## according to human {standards} (UST)

Although the term **men** is masculine, Peter is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: “according to people” or “as people” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## in the flesh (ULT)

## during their lifetimes (UST)

Here Peter uses **in the flesh** figuratively to refer to a person's lifetime. See how you translated this expression in [verse 2](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they might live (ULT)**  
**now} live {forever (UST)**

Here, **live** refers to experiencing eternal life. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “they might experience eternal life” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they might live...in the spirit (ULT)**  
**now} live {forever...by means of the Holy Spirit (UST)**

Here, **the spirit** could refer to: (1) the Holy Spirit, in which case this phrase would indicate the means by which the people received eternal life. Alternate translation: “they might live by the Spirit” (2) their spiritual existence, in which case this phrase would be referring to the spiritual realm that is contrasted with the physical realm mentioned earlier in the verse with the phrase “in the flesh.” Alternate translation: “they might live spiritually” or “they might live in the spiritual realm” See how you translated the same expression in [3:18](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- the gospel was preached
- to dead ones
- they might be judged
- in the flesh
- they might live
- in the spirit
- God

**Translation Words - UST**

- people} preached the good news {about Jesus
- to...believers who are now} dead
- people judged them
- during their lifetimes
- by means of the Holy Spirit
- now} live {forever
- God's {standards

## 1 Peter 4:7

### of all things...the end (ULT)

### All things {on this earth...end (UST)

Here, **the end of all things** refers to the end of the world, when Jesus returns and judges everyone. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “the end of the world, when Jesus returns,” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### has come near (ULT)

### will soon (UST)

Peter uses **has come near** figuratively to refer to something that will happen soon. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “will soon happen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### be of sound mind...and be sober (ULT)

### think sensibly...and clearly (UST)

The words translated as **sound mind** and **sober** mean basically the same thing. Peter uses them to emphasize the need to think clearly since the end of the world is near. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “be completely clearheaded” (See: [Doublet](#))

### be sober (ULT)

### clearly (UST)

See how you translated this word in [1:13](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### for prayers (ULT)

### in order to pray well (UST)

Here, **for** introduces a purpose clause. Peter is stating a purpose for his readers to think clearly. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a purpose clause. Alternate translation: “for the purpose of praying prayers” (See: [Connect — Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [be of sound mind](#)
- [prayers](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [think sensibly](#)
- [pray well](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now the end of all things has come near. Therefore [be of sound mind](#), and be sober for [prayers](#);

### UST

<sup>7</sup> All things {on this earth} will soon end. So [think sensibly](#) and clearly in order to [pray well](#).

## 1 Peter 4:8

**for love covers up a multitude of sins (ULT)  
because if you love others, you will forgive  
them for many sins {that they may commit  
against you (UST)**

Peter describes **love** figuratively as if it were a person who could cover something up, and he describes **sins** figuratively as if they were objects that could be covered up. This clause, **covers up**, means that people who love others will forgive them for the sins that they commit against them. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use similes. Alternate translation: “for those who love forgive the many sins committed against them by others” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- love
- love
- of sins

### Translation Words - UST

- love
- if you love others
- you will forgive them for many sins...that they may commit against you

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> above all, having fervent [love](#) for one another, for [love](#) covers up a multitude of sins;

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Most important of all, [love](#) each other sincerely, because [if you love others, you will forgive them for many sins {that they may commit against you}](#).

## 1 Peter 4:9

### **be} hospitable ones (ULT)**

### **Provide food and a place to sleep (UST)**

The word **hospitable** refers to showing kindness to and providing for the needs of guests and travelers. This was especially important in Peter's time because inns were dangerous places where people did many immoral activities, so Christians could not stay in them. If it might be helpful to your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "be those who provide food and a sleeping place" or "be those who provide room and board" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### **ULT**

<sup>9</sup> {be} hospitable ones to one another without complaining;

#### **UST**

<sup>9</sup> Provide food and a place to sleep for fellow Christians {who come to you}, and do it cheerfully.

### **without complaining (ULT)**

### **and do it cheerfully (UST)**

Here Peter uses a figure of speech that expresses a strong positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If this is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning positively. Alternate translation: "with cheerfulness" (See: [Litotes](#))



## **1 Peter 4:10**



## just as each one has received a gift (ULT) with the gifts that God has given you (UST)

Here, **gift** refers to special spiritual abilities that God gives to believers. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “just as each one has received a special spiritual ability from God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## as good stewards of the diverse grace of God (ULT)

### Manage well the various gifts that God has kindly given you (UST)

Peter uses **stewards** figuratively to refer to Christians using spiritual abilities from God to serve other believers as if they were managing resources for a boss. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a simile. Alternate translation: “as those managing well the diverse grace of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## of the diverse grace of God (ULT) the various gifts that God has kindly given you (UST)

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **grace** that is given by God. The word **grace** refers to the various spiritual gifts that God graciously gives believers. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “of the diverse, gracious gifts from God” (See: [Possession](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- just as
- as
- has received
- a gift
- ministering
- good
- stewards
- of the...grace
- of God

### Translation Words - UST

- Serve your fellow believers
- with the gifts that God has given you
- with the gifts that God has given you
- Manage well
- with the gifts that God has given you
- Manage well
- Manage well
- gifts...has kindly given you
- that God

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> just as each one has received a gift, ministering it to one another, as good stewards of the diverse grace of God.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Serve your fellow believers with the gifts that God has given you. Manage well the various gifts that God has kindly given you.



## **1 Peter 4:11**

**If anyone speaks—as with words of God (ULT)  
Those who speak {should speak} as if {they  
were speaking} words that God has spoken  
(UST)**

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a clause would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “if anyone speaks, let him speak as if he is speaking the words of God” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**if anyone serves—as from the strength that  
God supplies (ULT)  
Those who serve {others should serve them}  
with the strength that God gives them (UST)**

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a clause would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “if anyone serves others, let him serve others as if he were serving them with the strength that God supplies” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**God might be glorified (ULT)  
glorify God (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “you might glorify God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to whom be the glory and the power (ULT)  
I pray that everyone will see how glorious and powerful he is (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **glory** and **power**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: “may he be recognized as glorious and powerful” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [as](#)
- [as \(2\)](#)
- [of God](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [power](#)
- [eternity](#)
- [of eternities](#)
- [Amen](#)
- [serves](#)
- [the strength](#)
- [might be glorified](#)

**ULT**

<sup>11</sup> If anyone speaks—as with words of [God](#); if anyone [serves](#)—as from [the strength](#) that [God](#) supplies, so that in all things [God might be glorified](#) through [Jesus Christ](#), to whom be the [glory](#) and the [power](#) to [eternity of eternities](#). [Amen](#).

**UST**

<sup>11</sup> Those who speak {[should speak](#)} as if {[they were speaking](#)} words that [God](#) has spoken. Those who [serve](#) {[others should serve them](#)} with the [strength](#) that [God](#) gives them. {Do so} in order to [glorify God](#) by {[doing](#)} everything that [Jesus the Messiah enables you to do](#). I pray that everyone will see how [glorious](#) and [powerful](#) he is [forever](#). [May it be so!](#)

- glory
- Jesus
- Christ

## Translation Words - UST

- should speak} as if {they were speaking
- should serve them (2)
- words that God has spoken
- that God
- God
- that Jesus the Messiah enables you to do
- powerful
- forever
- forever
- May it be so
- Those who serve...others
- with the strength
- glorify
- glorious
- that Jesus the Messiah enables you to do

## 1 Peter 4:12

**the fiery trial among you (ULT)  
by the painful things you are experiencing.  
{Those things} are testing you {as people test  
metal by putting it into a} fire (UST)**

Peter refers to suffering Christians as if they were gold being refined by being passed through a fire. In the same way that fire refines gold, trials test and strengthen a Christian's faith. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or with a simile. Alternate translation: "the trial you are experiencing that is refining you like gold is refined in fire" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Beloved ones](#)
- [fiery trial](#)
- [a test](#)
- [as](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Fellow believers whom I love](#)
- [by the painful things you are experiencing...Those things} are testing you...as people test metal by putting it into a} fire](#)
- [by the painful things you are experiencing...Those things} are testing you...as people test metal by putting it into a} fire](#)
- [Do not think that} something unusual is happening to you](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> [Beloved ones](#), do not regard as strange the [fiery trial](#) among you, happening to you for [a test](#), [as](#) a strange thing happening to you,

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> [Fellow believers whom I love](#), do not be surprised [by the painful things you are experiencing](#). [{Those things} are testing you {as people test metal by putting it into a} fire](#). [{Do not think that} something unusual is happening to you](#).

## 1 Peter 4:13

### at the revelation of his glory (ULT) when the Messiah returns and shows everyone how glorious he is (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **revelation** and **glory**, you could express the same ideas in another way. This phrase could mean: (1) Christ will reveal his own glory. Alternate translation: “when he reveals how glorious he is” (2) God will reveal Christ’s glory. Alternate translation: “when God reveals how glorious Christ is” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### at the revelation of his glory (ULT) when the Messiah returns and shows everyone how glorious he is (UST)

Here, **the revelation of his glory** refers to the time in the future when Jesus returns to earth and judges everyone. If this might be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “at the revelation of his glory when he returns to earth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### you may rejoice, being glad (ULT) you may...be very glad (UST)

The words **rejoice** and **glad** mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize the intensity of joy. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “you may rejoice even more” or “you may be exceedingly glad” (See: [Doublet](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- in...sufferings
- of Christ
- rejoice
- you may rejoice
- revelation
- of...glory
- being glad

## Translation Words - UST

- rejoice
- you may...be very glad
- Messiah
- suffered
- you may...be very glad
- returns
- and shows everyone how glorious he is

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> but, however much you are sharing in the [sufferings of Christ](#), [rejoice](#), so that also, at the [revelation](#) of his [glory](#), [you may rejoice, being glad](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Instead, [rejoice](#) to the degree that you are suffering the same kinds of things that the [Messiah suffered](#). {Rejoice when you suffer,} in order that [you may also be very glad](#) when the Messiah [returns and shows everyone how glorious he is](#).





## **1 Peter 4:14**

## If you are reviled (ULT) If other people insult you (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "If people revile you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## for the name of Christ (ULT) because you believe in the Messiah (UST)

Here, **name** refers to Christ himself. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "for Christ" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## you are} blessed ones (ULT) God has blessed you (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you are people whom God has blessed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the Spirit of glory and of God (ULT) it shows that the Spirit of God, the Spirit who reveals how great God is (UST)

Here, **of glory** and **of God** both refer to the Holy Spirit. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "the Spirit of glory, who is the Spirit of God" or "the glorious Holy Spirit of God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## rests on you (ULT) dwells within you (UST)

Here, **rests on you** is an idiom that refers to the Holy Spirit continually dwelling within Christians. Peter borrowed this language from [Isaiah 11:2](#) where it originally referred to the Holy Spirit dwelling in the Messiah. The Holy Spirit dwells in the Messiah as well as in those who believe in the Messiah ([John 1:33](#); [14:16–17](#)). The Holy Spirit who dwells within believers provides strength and comfort when believers are persecuted for their faith. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "is staying with you" or "remains within you" (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- you are reviled
- the name
- of Christ
- you are} blessed ones
- Spirit
- of glory
- of God

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> If you are reviled for the name of Christ, {you are} blessed ones, because the Spirit of glory and of God rests on you.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> If other people insult you because you believe in the Messiah, God has blessed you, because it shows that the Spirit of God, the Spirit who reveals how great God is, dwells within you.

## Translation Words - UST

- other people insult you
- because you believe in
- the Messiah
- God has blessed you
- Spirit
- of God
- who reveals how great God is

## 1 Peter 4:15

**as a murderer or a thief or an evildoer or as a meddler (ULT)**

**because you murdered anyone, or stole anything, or did some other kind of evil thing, or because you interfered in someone else's affairs (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **murderer**, **thief**, **evildoer**, and **meddler**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: "as someone who murders, steals, does evil, or as someone who meddles" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**a meddler (ULT)**

**you interfered in someone else's affairs (UST)**

Here, **meddler** refers to a person who gets involved with the affairs of others without having a right to do so. Alternate translation: "someone who needlessly meddles in the affairs of other people" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> By all means do not let any of you [suffer as](#) a murderer or [a thief](#) or [an evildoer](#) or [as](#) a meddler,

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [Make sure that you do](#) not [suffer because](#) you murdered anyone, or [stole anything](#), or [did some other kind of evil thing](#), or [because](#) you interfered in someone else's affairs.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [do...let...suffer](#)
- [as](#)
- [as](#) (2)
- [a thief](#)
- [an evildoer](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Make sure that you do...suffer](#)
- [because](#)
- [because](#) (2)
- [stole anything](#)
- [did some other kind of evil thing](#)

## 1 Peter 4:16

**let him not be ashamed, but let him glorify God (ULT)**

**do not be ashamed...Instead, praise God (UST)**

Peter is addressing his readers indirectly by using the third person. If this might be confusing in your language, you can use the second person, as the previous verse does. See the discussion of this in the General Notes for this chapter. Alternate translation: “do not be ashamed, but glorify God” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**in this name (ULT)**

**as those who have the name “Christian (UST)**

Here, **this name** refers to the title “Christian” mentioned earlier in the verse. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “because he bears the name ‘Christian’” or “because people have recognized him as a Christian” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> but if [as a Christian](#), [let him](#) not [be ashamed](#), but [let him glorify God](#) in this [name](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> But do not [be ashamed](#) if [you suffer because you are a Christian](#). Instead, [praise God as those who have the name “Christian.”](#)

## Translation Words - ULT

- [as](#)
- [a Christian](#)
- [let him...be ashamed](#)
- [let him glorify](#)
- [God](#)
- [name](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [do...be ashamed](#)
- [you suffer because](#)
- [you are a Christian](#)
- [praise](#)
- [God](#)
- [as those who have the name...Christian](#)



## **1 Peter 4:17**

**it is} the time to begin the judgment with the household of God (ULT)**  
**it is now time for God to begin judging people, and first he will judge those who belong to him (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **judgment**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "it is time for God to begin judging the household of God" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the household of God (ULT)**  
**those who belong to him (UST)**

Here Peter uses **household** figuratively to refer to all believers as if they were a family that belongs to God. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "those who belong to God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**but if first with us (ULT)**

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a clause would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the the previous clause. Alternate translation: "but if it is time for judgment to begin first with us" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**with us (ULT)**  
**us believers (UST)**

When Peter says **us**, he is speaking of himself and his readers, so **us** would be inclusive. Your language may require you to mark these forms. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**what {will be} the end of the ones disobeying the gospel of God (ULT)**  
**think about what {terrible things} will finally happen to those who do not obey the good news that comes from him (UST)**

Peter is not asking for information, but is using the question form here to emphasize that God's judgment will be more severe for people who reject the gospel than for those who believe it. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "how terrible will be the end of the ones disobeying the gospel of God!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the end (ULT)**  
**what {terrible things} will finally happen (UST)**

Here, **end** refers to the final result of the lives of people who do not believe in Jesus. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "the final result" or "the outcome" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## ULT

<sup>17</sup> For {it is} the [time](#) to begin the [judgment](#) with the [household of God](#); but if first with us, what {will be} the end of the [ones disobeying](#) the [gospel of God](#)?

## UST

<sup>17</sup> {I say this} because it is [now time for](#) God to begin [judging people](#), and first he will judge [those who belong to him](#). Since {he will judge} us believers first, think about what {terrible things} will finally happen to those [who do not obey](#) the [good news](#) that comes from [him](#)!



## **of the ones disobeying (ULT)** **to those who do not obey (UST)**

Here, **disobeying** refers to disobeying the command to repent and believe the gospel, which is part of the gospel message. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2:8](#). Alternate translation: “of the ones refusing to believe” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## **the gospel of God (ULT)** **the good news that comes from him (UST)**

Here, **the gospel of God** could refer to: (1) the gospel that came from God. Alternate translation: “the gospel from God” (2) the gospel that is about God. Alternate translation: “the gospel about God” (See: [Possession](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [time](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [household](#)
- [of God](#)
- [of God \(2\)](#)
- [of...ones disobeying](#)
- [gospel](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [now time for](#)
- [judging people](#)
- [those who belong to him](#)
- [those who belong to him](#)
- [him \(2\)](#)
- [to...who do not obey](#)
- [good news](#)



## 1 Peter 4:18

## And (ULT) Solomon} also {wrote in the Scriptures (UST)

**And** here introduces a quotation from an Old Testament book ([Proverbs 11:31](#)). If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use a comparable phrase that indicates that Peter is quoting from an important text. Alternate translation: “And Solomon wrote in the Scriptures” (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

## If with difficulty the righteous one is being saved, where will the ungodly one and sinner appear (ULT)

## If righteous people must suffer many difficult trials before going to heaven, how much more will the ungodly and sinful people surely suffer (UST)

This sentence is a quotation from [Proverbs 11:31](#). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

## If with difficulty the righteous one is being saved (ULT) If righteous people must suffer many difficult trials before going to heaven (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “If with difficulty God is saving the righteous one” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the righteous one...the ungodly one and sinner (ULT) righteous people...the ungodly and sinful people (UST)

Peter is speaking of these types of people in general, and not of specific, individual people. If this would be misunderstood in your language, use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: “righteous ones ... ungodly and sinful ones” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

## where will the ungodly one and sinner appear (ULT) how much more will the ungodly and sinful people surely suffer (UST)

Peter is not asking for information, but is using the question form here to emphasize that ungodly people will suffer much more than believers do. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “the ungodly and sinner will surely not appear!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And, “If with difficulty the [righteous one is being saved](#), where will the [ungodly one](#) and [sinner](#) appear?”

### UST

<sup>18</sup> {Solomon} also {wrote in the Scriptures}, “If [righteous people](#) must suffer many difficult trials [before going to heaven](#), how much more will the [ungodly](#) and [sinful people](#) surely suffer!”

**where will the ungodly one and sinner appear (ULT)**  
**how much more will the ungodly and sinful people surely suffer (UST)**

Here, the combination of **where will** and **appear** is an idiom meaning “what will happen.” If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: “what will happen to the ungodly and the sinner” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the ungodly one and sinner (ULT)**  
**the ungodly and sinful people (UST)**

The words **ungodly** and **sinner** mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize the wickedness of these people. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “the ungodly sinners” (See: [Doublet](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [righteous one](#)
- [is being saved](#)
- [ungodly one](#)
- [sinner](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [righteous people](#)
- [before going to heaven](#)
- [ungodly](#)
- [sinful people](#)

## 1 Peter 4:19

### souls (ULT)

### with their lives (UST)

See how you translated **souls** in 1:9. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### in doing good (ULT)

### while continuing to do what is good (UST)

Alternate translation: “while doing good” or “while continuing to do good deeds”

### Translation Words - ULT

- suffering
- will of God
- of God
- souls
- to the faithful
- Creator

### Translation Words - UST

- who are suffering
- God
- God...wants...them to suffer
- with their lives
- God is the one who created them
- and he always does what he promises to do

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> So then, also let those suffering according to the will of God entrust their souls to the faithful Creator in doing good.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Therefore, those who are suffering because God wants {them to suffer} should trust God with their lives while continuing to do what is good. God is the one who created them and he always does what he promises to do.

# 1 Peter 5

## 1 Peter 5 General Notes

### Structure and Formatting

How believers should interact with one another (5:1–11)

Conclusion (5:12–14)

### Special Concepts in this Chapter

#### Lion

Other animals are usually afraid of lions because they are fast and strong, and they eat almost every other kind of animal. They also eat people. Satan wants to make God's people afraid, so Peter uses the simile of a lion to teach his readers that Satan can harm their bodies, but if they trust in God and obey him, they will always be God's people, and God will care for them. (See: [Simile](#))

#### Babylon

Babylon was the evil nation that had destroyed Jerusalem, taken the Jews away from their homes, and ruled over them. In other places in Scripture, the authors use Babylon as a metaphor for the enemies of God's people. In [verse 13](#) Peter uses Babylon as a metaphor for the nation that was persecuting the Christians to whom he was writing. Most scholars believe that here Peter is referring to Rome because the Romans were severely persecuting Christians there at that time. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#) and [Metaphor](#))





## **1 Peter 5:1**

## General Information:

In [verses 1–4](#) Peter speaks directly to men who are leaders in the churches.

**the elders...the fellow elder (ULT)**  
**those...who are elders {who lead the assemblies of believers...I am also} an elder (UST)**

In [verses 1–5](#) the words **elder** and **elders** refer specifically to church leaders, who were often older men. Here these words do not refer to old men in general. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the fellow church leader ... the church leaders” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**witness of the sufferings of Christ (ULT)**  
**I personally witnessed the Messiah suffer (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **witness** and **sufferings**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: “one who has witnessed Christ suffer in many ways” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**in the glory that is about to be revealed (ULT)**  
**in his glorious nature that God will soon reveal (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “in the glory that God is about to reveal” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the...in...glory (ULT)**  
**soon...in his glorious nature (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “in the glorious nature of Christ” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**in the glory that is about to be revealed (ULT)**  
**in his glorious nature that God will soon reveal (UST)**

The phrase **the glory that is about to be revealed** refers to Christ’s glorious return to earth in the future. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “in the glory that is about to be revealed when Christ returns” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [the elders](#)
- [fellow elder](#)
- [witness](#)

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> Therefore, I—the [fellow elder](#) and [witness](#) of the [sufferings of Christ](#) and the one who shares in the [glory](#) that is about [to be revealed](#)—[exhort the elders](#) among you:

## UST

<sup>1</sup> Now I{, [Peter](#),} [urge](#) those among you [who are elders {who lead the assemblies of believers}](#): {[I am also](#)} [an elder](#). [I personally witnessed the Messiah suffer](#) and I will share [in his glorious nature that God will soon reveal](#).

- of...sufferings
- of Christ
- in...glory
- to be revealed
- I...exhort

## Translation Words - UST

- I{, Peter,} urge
- those...who are elders {who lead the assemblies of believers
- I am also} an elder
- I personally witnessed
- the Messiah suffer
- the Messiah suffer
- in his glorious nature
- that God will...reveal



## **1 Peter 5:2**

**Shepherd the...flock of God (ULT)**  
**You elders,} take care of the...believers...as if**  
**you were shepherds who take care of their**  
**flocks of sheep (UST)**

Here Peter uses **Shepherd** figuratively to refer to leading and taking care of believers, and he uses **flock** figuratively to refer to those believers. Elders who lead assemblies of believers should take care of those believers like shepherds take care of their sheep. Since the shepherd and sheep metaphors are important metaphors in the Bible, you should keep the metaphors in your translation or use similes. Alternate translation: "Take care of God's people as if they were a flock of sheep" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**exercising oversight—not under compulsion**  
**(ULT)**

**Take care of them,} not because you must do it (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **oversight** and **compulsion**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: "supervising—not because you must do so" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**exercising oversight—not under compulsion (ULT)**  
**Take care of them,} not because you must do it (UST)**

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a clause would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: "exercising oversight over them—not doing this under compulsion" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**not under compulsion, but willingly (ULT)**  
**not because you must do it, but because you really want to (UST)**

The phrases **not under compulsion** and **willingly** mean the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize that Peter wants church leaders to voluntarily take care of believers. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "with complete willingness" (See: [Doublet](#))

**according to God (ULT)**  
**as God desires (UST)**

This phrase refers to acting according to God's will or requirements. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "according to God's will" or "as God wants you to" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> **Shepherd** the **flock of God** among you, **exercising oversight**—not under compulsion, but willingly, according to **God**—and not greedily, but eagerly;

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> {**You elders,} take care of the believers** with you **as if you were shepherds who take care of their flocks of sheep**. {**Take care of them,} not because you must do it, but because you really want to, as God desires. Do not {do this} in a greedy manner {to get money for doing it}, but do it enthusiastically.**

**and not greedily, but eagerly (ULT)**

**Do not {do this} in a greedy manner {to get money for doing it}, but do it enthusiastically (UST)**

The phrases **not greedily** and **eagerly** mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize that Peter wants church leaders to eagerly take care of believers. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “with complete eagerness” (See: [Doublet](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Shepherd](#)
- [flock](#)
- [of God](#)
- [God](#)
- [exercising oversight](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [You elders,} take care of](#)
- [believers...as if you were shepherds who take care of their flocks of sheep](#)
- [believers...as if you were shepherds who take care of their flocks of sheep](#)
- [God](#)
- [Take care of them](#)

## 1 Peter 5:3

### as lording it over (ULT) like domineering bosses (UST)

Here Peter uses **lording it over** figuratively to refer to acting toward people in a harsh and controlling manner, as if someone were a harsh master who abuses his servants. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly or use a simile. Alternate translation: “harshly controlling” or “acting like harsh masters over” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### your} portion (ULT) over the people whom God has assigned to you (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **portion**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “those who are assigned to you” or “those whom God has apportioned to you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### being examples of the flock (ULT) be {good} examples to those believers {by how you conduct your lives (UST)

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **examples** that are for **the flock**. If this is not clear in your language, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “being examples for the flock” (See: [Possession](#))

### of the flock (ULT) to those believers {by how you conduct your lives (UST)

See how you translated **flock** in the previous verse. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- as
- of...flock

### Translation Words - UST

- like
- to those believers...by how you conduct your lives

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and not as lording it over {your} portion, but being examples of the flock.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Do not act like domineering bosses over the people whom God has assigned to you. Instead, be {good} examples to those believers {by how you conduct your lives}.





## **1 Peter 5:4**

## And (ULT)

### If you do those things,} then (UST)

**And** here indicates that what follows is the result of obeying the commands that Peter gave in [verses 2–3](#). Use a natural way in your language for introducing a result clause. Alternate translation: “As a result of doing these things” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

## the Chief Shepherd (ULT)

### Jesus, who is like our ruling shepherd (UST)

**Chief Shepherd** is a title for Jesus. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “Jesus, the Chief Shepherd” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## the Chief Shepherd (ULT)

### Jesus, who is like our ruling shepherd (UST)

Here Peter speaks of Jesus figuratively as if he were a **shepherd** who has authority over all the leaders of the assemblies of believers. Peter told those leaders to shepherd their flocks in [verse 2](#). Since **Chief Shepherd** is an important title for Jesus that connects to some prophecies about the Messiah in the Old Testament, you should keep the metaphor in your translation or use a simile. Alternate translation: “the one who is like a lead shepherd” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## when the Chief Shepherd has been revealed (ULT)

### when Jesus, who is like our ruling shepherd, appears (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “when the Chief Shepherd appears” or “when God reveals the Chief Shepherd” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the unfading crown of glory (ULT)

### a reward. {That reward will be} glorious {and will} last forever (UST)

Here, **crown** refers to a symbol of victory. It does not refer to the type of **crown** that kings wear. In ancient times an athlete would receive this **crown** as a reward for winning a competition. Those crowns were often made of leaves or flowers that would fade. Unlike those victory crowns, the reward that God gives will be **unfading**, which means that it will last forever. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “a glorious reward that will last forever” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## crown of glory (ULT)

### a reward. {That reward will be} glorious (UST)

This could refer to: (1) a **crown** that is characterized by **glory**. Alternate translation: “glorious crown” (2) a **crown** that is the **glory** referred to in [verse 1](#). Alternate translation: “crown, that is, glory” (See: [Possession](#))

## ULT

<sup>4</sup> And **when** the **Chief Shepherd** has been revealed, you will receive the unfading **crown of glory**.

## UST

<sup>4</sup> {If you do those things,} then **when** Jesus, who is like our ruling shepherd, appears, he will give each of you {leaders} a reward. {That reward will be} **glorious** {and will} last forever.

## Translation Words - ULT

- when...has been revealed
- Chief Shepherd
- you will receive
- crown
- of glory

## Translation Words - UST

- when...appears
- Jesus, who is like our ruling shepherd
- he will give each of you {leaders
- a reward. {That reward
- will be} glorious



## 1 Peter 5:5

## General Information:

In this verse Peter first instructs younger men specifically and then continues to instruct all of the believers.

### be subjected (ULT) obey (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “subject yourselves” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to elders (ULT) the elders {who lead the assemblies of believers (UST)

See how you translated **elders** in [verse 1](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### everyone (ULT) all of you {believers (UST)

Here, **everyone** refers to all the believers to whom Peter is writing this letter, and not to all people. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “every one of you believers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### clothe yourselves with humility (ULT) should act humbly (UST)

Peter speaks of **humility** figuratively as if it were a piece of clothing that a person could put on. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “act with humility” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### with humility (ULT) humbly (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **humility**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “with humble actions” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### for (ULT) because {what Solomon wrote in the Scriptures is true (UST)

Here, **for** introduces a quotation from the Old Testament ([Proverbs 3:34](#)). If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use a comparable phrase that indicates that Peter is quoting from an important text. Alternate translation: “for it is as Solomon wrote in the Scriptures” (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

## ULT

<sup>5</sup> Similarly, young men, be subjected to elders. And everyone, clothe yourselves with humility toward one another, for, “God resists proud ones, but gives grace to humble ones.”

## UST

<sup>5</sup> In a similar way, you young men, obey the elders {who lead the assemblies of believers}. Now all of you {believers} should act humbly toward each other, because {what Solomon wrote in the Scriptures is true:} “God opposes proud people, but he acts kindly toward humble people.”

**God resists proud ones, but gives grace to humble ones (ULT)**

**God opposes proud people, but he acts kindly toward humble people (UST)**

This sentence is a quotation from [Proverbs 3:34](#). It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

**gives grace (ULT)**

**he acts kindly toward (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **grace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "acts graciously" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [Similarly](#)
- [be subjected](#)
- [to elders](#)
- [clothe yourselves](#)
- [with humility](#)
- [to humble ones](#)
- [God](#)
- [proud ones](#)
- [grace](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [In a similar way](#)
- [obey](#)
- [the elders {who lead the assemblies of believers](#)
- [should act](#)
- [humbly](#)
- [humble people](#)
- [God](#)
- [proud people](#)
- [he acts kindly toward](#)



## 1 Peter 5:6

**under the powerful hand of God (ULT)**  
**before God who has the power {to save and to punish people (UST)}**

Peter uses **hand** figuratively to refer to God's power to save humble people and punish proud people. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "under God's great power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**he may lift you up (ULT)**  
**he may honor you (UST)**

Peter is using a spatial metaphor to describe God honoring someone as if God would **lift** that person **up**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "God may show honor to you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, [humble yourselves](#) under the [powerful hand of God](#) so that [he may lift you up](#) at a time,

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Since that is true, [humble yourselves before God who has the power {to save and to punish people}](#) in order that [he may honor you at the proper time](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [humble yourselves](#)
- [powerful](#)
- [hand](#)
- [of God](#)
- [he may lift...up](#)
- [a time](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [humble yourselves](#)
- [before God who has the power...to save and to punish people](#)
- [before God who has the power...to save and to punish people](#)
- [before God who has the power...to save and to punish people](#)
- [he may honor](#)
- [the proper time](#)

## 1 Peter 5:7

**having cast all your anxiety on him (ULT)  
Trust God to take care of everything that  
worries...you (UST)**

Here Peter speaks of **anxiety** figuratively as if it were a heavy burden that a person can take off of his back and **cast** onto God. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “trusting him with everything that worries you” or “letting him take care of all the things that trouble you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> having cast all your anxiety on him, because he cares for you.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Trust God to take care of everything that worries you because he cares about you.

## 1 Peter 5:8

### Be sober, be watchful (ULT) Think clearly and alertly (UST)

The words translated as **sober** and **watchful** mean basically the same thing. Peter uses them to emphasize that believers need to be alert since the devil wants to destroy them. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "Be completely alert" (See: [Doublet](#))

### Be sober (ULT) Think clearly (UST)

See how you translated this word in [1:13](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Be sober, [be watchful](#). Your [adversary, the devil, is walking around like a roaring lion, seeking someone to devour](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Think clearly [and alertly](#), {because} the [devil](#) is your [enemy and he is going around, looking for people to destroy](#). [He is like a lion](#) that roars [as it searches for people to kill and eat](#).

### is walking around like a roaring lion, seeking someone to devour (ULT) He is like a lion that roars as it searches for people to kill and eat (UST)

Peter speaks of **the devil** figuratively as if he were a **roaring lion** who wants to **devour** people. Just as a hungry lion devours its prey, the devil is **seeking** to destroy the faith of believers. See the discussion of this in the General Notes for this chapter. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "is trying to find ways to destroy the faith of believers" (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [be watchful](#)
- [adversary](#)
- [the devil](#)
- [is walking around](#)
- [like](#)
- [a...lion](#)
- [seeking](#)
- [to devour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and alertly](#)
- [devil](#)
- [is...enemy and he is going around, looking for people to destroy](#)
- [He is like](#)
- [a lion](#)
- [as it](#)
- [searches for](#)
- [to kill and eat](#)



## **1 Peter 5:9**

**firm in the faith (ULT)**  
**by continuing to firmly trust {in the Messiah**  
**and his message (UST)**

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a clause would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “being firm in the faith” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**in the faith (ULT)**  
**by continuing to firmly trust...in the Messiah**  
**and his message (UST)**

Here, **the faith** could refer to: (1) a person’s trust in Jesus. Alternate translation: “in the faith that you have” (2) the Christian faith in general. Alternate translation: “in the Christian faith” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the same kind of sufferings...are being brought to completion (ULT)**  
**suffering in similar ways...are (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **sufferings**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: “that people are suffering in the same ways” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the same kind of sufferings...are being brought to completion (ULT)**  
**suffering in similar ways...are (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the same kind of sufferings are occurring” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in your brotherhood (ULT)**  
**your fellow believers (UST)**

See how you translated **brotherhood** in 2:17. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in the world (ULT)**  
**all over the world (UST)**

Alternate translation: “in various places throughout the world”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [in...faith](#)
- [knowing](#)
- [of sufferings](#)
- [are being brought to completion](#)
- [in...brotherhood](#)
- [world](#)

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> Resist him, firm in the [faith](#), [knowing](#) the same kind of [sufferings are being brought to completion](#) in your [brotherhood](#) in the [world](#).

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> Resist the devil [by continuing to firmly trust {in the Messiah and his message}](#). [{Do this} because you know that](#) your [fellow believers](#) all over the [world are suffering](#) in similar ways.

## Translation Words - UST

- by continuing to firmly trust...in the Messiah and his message
- Do this} because you know that
- fellow believers
- world
- are
- suffering





## **1 Peter 5:10**

**But the God of all grace, the one who has called you to his eternal glory in Christ, having suffered for a little while (ULT)  
But after you have suffered for a brief time, the God who acts kindly {toward you} in every way...in...God is the one who chose you to experience his glorious presence in heaven forever as you are joined to the Messiah (UST)**

If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of these clauses so that they appear in chronological order. Alternate translation: "But after having suffered for a little while, the God of all grace, the one who has called you to his eternal glory in Christ" (See: [Information Structure](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But the God of all grace, the one who has called you to his eternal glory in Christ, having suffered for a little while, will himself restore, confirm, strengthen, {and} establish.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> But after you have suffered for a brief time, the God who acts kindly {toward you} in every way will himself restore {what you have lost} and will completely strengthen you in every way. God is the one who chose you to experience his glorious presence in heaven forever as you are joined to the Messiah.

**the...God of all grace (ULT)  
the...God who acts kindly {toward you} in every way (UST)**

**God of all grace** could mean: (1) God is always gracious. Alternate translation: "the God who is always gracious" (2) God always give gracious gifts, as mentioned in [4:10](#). Alternate translation: "the God who gives all gracious gifts" (See: [Possession](#))

**to his eternal glory (ULT)  
in...to experience his glorious presence in heaven forever (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "to his glorious presence forever" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**in Christ (ULT)  
as you are joined to the Messiah (UST)**

Here, **in Christ** refers to being united with Christ through faith in him. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "in union with Christ" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**for a little while (ULT)  
for a brief time (UST)**

Alternate translation: "for a short time"

**will himself restore, confirm, strengthen, {and} establish (ULT)  
will himself restore {what you have lost} and will completely strengthen you...every way (UST)**

Here, **confirm**, **strengthen**, and **establish** all mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize that God will fully strengthen people who suffer because they trust in Jesus. If your language does not use

repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “will himself restore and thoroughly strengthen in every way” (See: [Doublet](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- grace
- strengthen
- and} establish
- one who has called
- eternal
- glory
- in Christ
- Christ
- having suffered
- will...restore
- confirm

## Translation Words - UST

- after you have suffered
- God
- one who chose
- in...to experience his glorious presence in heaven forever
- in...to experience his glorious presence in heaven forever
- as you are joined to the Messiah
- the Messiah
- who acts kindly {toward you
- will...restore {what you have lost
- and will completely strengthen you...every way
- and will completely strengthen you...every way
- and will completely strengthen you...every way

## 1 Peter 5:11

**To him {be} the power (ULT)**

**I pray that he will rule powerfully (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **power**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "May he rule powerfully" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [power](#)
- [forever](#)
- [Amen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [will rule powerfully](#)
- [forever](#)
- [May it be so](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> To him {be} the [power forever](#). [Amen](#).

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> I pray that he [will rule powerfully forever](#). [May it be so!](#)



## **1 Peter 5:12**

**Through Silvanus, the faithful brother, as I regard {him}, I wrote to you briefly (ULT)  
Silas has written this letter for me {as I have dictated it to him}. I consider him to be a faithful fellow believer. I have written this short letter to you (UST)**

**Through Silvanus** means that Silvanus wrote down the words that Peter told him to write in this letter. In ancient times it was common for people to use scribes to write down letters for them. If this might confuse your readers, you could express it explicitly. Alternate translation: "I wrote to you briefly by means of Silvanus, the faithful brother, as I regard him, who wrote down what I told him to write" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## ULT

<sup>12</sup> Through Silvanus, the [faithful brother](#), [as](#) I regard {him}, I wrote to you briefly, [exhorting](#) and [testifying](#) this to be the [true grace of God](#). Stand in it.

## UST

<sup>12</sup> Silas has written this letter for me {as I have dictated it to him}. [I consider him to be a faithful fellow believer](#). I have written this short letter to you [in order to encourage you](#) and [to declare to you that](#) what I have written is [about the true and gracious message from God](#). Continue to firmly believe this message!

**brother (ULT)**

**I consider him to be a faithful fellow believer (UST)**

Although **brother** is masculine and Silvanus is a man, here Peter is using **brother** in a generic sense to refer to another believer. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "fellow Christian" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**this (ULT)**

**what I have written (UST)**

Here, **this** refers back to what Peter has written in this letter, especially the gospel message that the letter contains. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: "what I have written to you" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

**this to be the true grace of God (ULT)**

**what I have written is about the true and gracious message from God (UST)**

Here the word **grace** refers to the gospel message, which tells of the kind things that God has done for believers. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "this letter I have written contains God's true and gracious message" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Stand in it (ULT)**

**Continue to firmly believe this message (UST)**

Peter uses **Stand** figuratively to refer to being strongly committed to something as if someone is standing firmly in one place and refusing to move. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "Remain strongly committed to it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Stand in it (ULT)****Continue to firmly believe this message (UST)**

Here, **it** refers to **the true grace of God** mentioned earlier in the verse. If this might confuse your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: “Stand in this true grace” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#) )

**Translation Words - ULT**

- faithful
- brother
- as
- exhorting
- testifying
- true
- the...grace
- of God

**Translation Words - UST**

- I consider him to be a faithful fellow believer
- I consider him to be a faithful fellow believer
- I consider him to be a faithful fellow believer
- in order to encourage you
- to declare to you that
- about...and gracious message
- the true
- from God





## **1 Peter 5:13**

**She {who is} in Babylon, fellow-elect one (ULT)**  
**In {this city that we call} 'Babylon,' the**  
**believers, whom God has chosen {to belong to**  
**him} just like he chose you (UST)**

**She** and **fellow-elect one** here both refer to the group of believers who were with Peter when he wrote this letter. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "This group of believers in Babylon, who are fellow-elect ones" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

**in Babylon (ULT)**  
**In {this city that we call} 'Babylon (UST)**

Here, **Babylon** could mean: (1) the city of Rome. Alternate translation: "in Rome, which is like Babylon" (2) the city of Babylon, as it appears in the ULT. See the discussion of this in the General Notes to this chapter. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

**fellow-elect one (ULT)**  
**whom God has chosen {to belong to him} just like he chose you (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "one whom God has elected" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**greet (ULT)**  
**send their regards (UST)**

As was customary in this culture, Peter concludes the letter by extending greetings from people who are with him and who know the people to whom he is writing. Your language may have a particular way of sharing greetings in a letter. If so, you can use that form here. Alternate translation: "asks to be remembered by" or "says hello to"

**my son (ULT)**  
**who is like a son to me (UST)**

Peter refers to Mark figuratively as if he were his **son**, because he taught him about Christianity and loved him like a **son**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the one who is like my son" or "my spiritual son" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Mark (ULT)**  
**Mark (UST)**

**Mark** is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Babylon](#)
- [fellow-elect one](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> She {who is} in [Babylon](#), [fellow-elect one](#), greets you, and my [son Mark](#).

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> In {this city that we call} '[Babylon](#),' the believers, [whom God has chosen {to belong to him} just like he chose you](#), send their regards to you. [Mark, who is like a son](#) to me, also {sends his regards to you}.

- son
- Mark

## Translation Words - UST

- Babylon
- whom God has chosen {to belong to him} just like he chose you
- Mark
- who is like a son

## 1 Peter 5:14

### Greet (ULT)

### Affectionately greet (UST)

**Greet** here is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. Alternate translation: "Make it your habit to greet" or "Make it your practice to greet" (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#) )

### with a kiss of love (ULT)

### with a kiss to show that you love each other (UST)

A **kiss** was an action that expressed Christian affection in this culture. It showed the unity of those who belong to Christ. If there is a gesture with similar meaning in your culture, you could consider using it here in your translation. Alternate translation: "with a loving kiss" or "a kiss to show your love for each other" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Peace to you all who {are} in Christ (ULT)

### I pray that God will continue to make all you who are joined to the Messiah feel peaceful (UST)

As was customary in his culture, Peter closes his letter with a blessing for his readers. Use a form that people would recognize as a blessing in your language. Alternate translation: "May all you who are in Christ experience peace within yourselves" or "I pray that you all who are in Christ will have peace" (See: [Blessings](#))

### in Christ (ULT)

### are joined to the Messiah (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [verse 10](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a kiss
- of love
- Peace
- in Christ
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- a kiss
- to show that you love each other
- I pray that God will continue to make...feel peaceful
- are joined to the Messiah
- the Messiah

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Greet one another with a kiss of love. Peace to you all who {are} in Christ.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Affectionately greet each other with a kiss to show that you love each other. I pray that God will continue to make all you who are joined to the Messiah feel peaceful.



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 29**

# Abstract Nouns

## Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partspeech\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

## Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: 1 Peter 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:4; 1:5; 1:7; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:14; 1:15; 1:18; 1:20; 1:21; 1:22; 2:1; 2:2; 2:9; 2:12; 2:14; 2:15; 2:19; 3:2; 3:3; 3:7; 3:10; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 3:21; 4:3; 4:11; 4:13; 4:15; 4:17; 5:1; 5:2; 5:3; 5:5; 5:9; 5:10; 5:11)



## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:12; 1:13; 1:16; 1:18; 1:20; 1:25; 2:4; 2:5; 2:8; 2:9; 2:14; 2:20; 2:21; 2:22; 2:23; 2:24; 2:25; 3:1; 3:7; 3:9; 3:14; 3:16; 3:18; 3:20; 3:22; 4:6; 4:11; 4:14; 4:18; 5:1; 5:4; 5:5; 5:9; 5:13](#))

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.  
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**  
or:  
At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [1:5](#); [1:7](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [1:22](#); [2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:13](#); [2:19](#); [2:21](#); [2:23](#); [3:2](#); [3:9](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:16](#); [3:18](#); [3:19](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [4:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#); [5:14](#))

# Blessings

## Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

This page answers the question: *What are blessings, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-poetry\]\]](#)

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

## Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, “Yahweh be with you.” And they said to him, “May Yahweh bless you.” (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul’s second letter to Timothy:

Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT)  
The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

■ The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb 'be.' However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the 'grace' from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide 'God' as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

■ The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

■ They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them."

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

■ The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God's presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

■ "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

"Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them."

"Our sister, by God's power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them."

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [5:14](#))



## Collective Nouns

### Description

This page answers the question: *What are collective nouns and how can I translate them?*

A collective noun is a singular noun that refers to a group of something. Examples: a **family**, **clan**, or **tribe** is a group of people who are related to each other; a **flock** is a group of birds or sheep; a **fleet** is a group of ships; and an **army** is a group of soldiers.

Many collective nouns are used exclusively as a singular replacement for a group as in the examples above. Frequently in the Bible the name of an ancestor is used, through a process of metonymy, as a collective noun referencing the group of his descendants. In the Bible, sometimes the singular noun will take a singular verb form, other times it will take a plural verb form. This may depend on how the author is thinking about the group, or whether the action is being done as a group or as individuals.

### Reason This is a Translation Issue

There are several issues that require care when translating collective nouns. Further care is needed because the language you are translating into may not use collective nouns in the same way as the language you are translating from. Issues include:

The source language may have a collective noun for a group that the target language does not and vice-versa. You may have to translate a collective noun with a plural noun in your language, or you may need to translate a plural noun with a collective noun in your language.

Subject-verb agreement. Different languages or dialects may have different rules about using singular or plural verbs with collective nouns.

Examples (from Wikipedia):

- a singular noun with a singular verb: The team *is* in the dressing room.
- a singular noun with a plural verb which is correct in British, but not American, English: The team *are* fighting among themselves. The team *have* finished the project.

Pronoun agreement. Similar to the previous, care needs to be taken to use the correct pronoun plurality and possibly gender or noun class to agree with the number/gender/class of the noun used. See the biblical examples below.

Clarity of referent. Especially if there is a mismatch in your translation between the verb and noun or pronoun concerning any of the factors above, readers may be confused about who or what is being referenced.

### Examples from the Bible

And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

The word in bold is written in singular form in both Hebrew and English, but it refers to a group of warriors that fight together.

and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

The word in bold is singular and refers to a group of sheep.

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

Note in this example that the noun is singular but the pronoun is plural. This may or may not be allowed or natural in your language.

Do not let **your heart** be troubled. **You** believe in God; believe also in me. (John 14:1 ULT)

In this verse, the words translated “your” and “you” are plural, referring to many people. The word “heart” is singular in form, but it refers to all of their hearts as a group.

And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

The word **hair** is singular, but it refers to many hairs, not just one.

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

Here, “Israel” is singular, but means “the Israelites” by metonymy.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has a collective (singular) noun that refers to the same group as referenced by the collective noun in the source text, then translate the word using that term. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.
- (2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.
- (3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.
- (4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the Israelites** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the Israelites** go.”

And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

And he shall take the **hairs** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **them** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings.

- (2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.

And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

And Joab and all the **army men who were** with him arrived

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **people of the crowd were** coming to him, and he was teaching **them**.

(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.

and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

and though the **group of sheep** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls.

And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the people of Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the people of Israel** go."

(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

Now this John had his clothing from the **hairs** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist (Matthew 3:4a ULT)

Now this John had his clothing from the **hair** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that {is} in **the heavens** above, or that {is} in the earth beneath, or that {is} in **the waters** under the earth. (Deuteronomy 5:8 ULT)

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in **the water** under the earth.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:5](#); [2:9](#))

## Connect — Contrast Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a contrast relationship?*

### Contrast Relationship

#### Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

#### Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:4](#))

## Connect — Factual Conditions

### Conditional Relationships

This page answers the question: *How can I translate factual conditions?*

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, “if ... then.” Often, however, the word “then” is not stated.

### Factual Conditions

#### Description

A Factual Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true in the speaker’s mind. In English, a sentence containing a Factual Condition can use the words “even though,” “since,” or “this being the case” to indicate that it is a factual condition and not a hypothetical condition.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not state something as a condition if it is certain or true. Translators from these languages may misunderstand the original languages and think that the condition is uncertain. This would lead to mistakes in their translations. Even if the translators understand that the condition is certain or true, the readers may misunderstand it. In this case, it would be best to translate it as a statement of fact rather than as a conditional statement.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

“**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!” (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

Elijah came near to all the people and said, “How long will you keep changing your mind? **If Yahweh is God**, follow him. But if Baal is God, then follow him.” Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

This sentence has the same construction as a hypothetical condition. The condition is “if Yahweh is God.” If that is true, then the Israelites should worship Yahweh. But the prophet Elijah does not question whether or not Yahweh is God. In fact, he is so certain that Yahweh is God that later in the passage he pours water all over his sacrifice. He is confident that God is real and that he will burn even an offering that is completely wet. Over and over again, the prophets taught that Yahweh is God, so the people should worship him. The people did not worship Yahweh, however, even though He is God. By putting the statement or instruction into the form of a Factual Condition, Elijah is trying to get the Israelites to understand more clearly what they should do.

“A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?” says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

Yahweh has said that he is a father and a master to Israel, so even though this sounds like a hypothetical condition because it begins with “if,” it is not hypothetical. This verse begins with the proverb that a son honors his father. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh. The other proverb in the verse says that a servant honors his master. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh, so it seems that he is not their master. But Yahweh is the master. Yahweh uses the form of a hypothetical condition to demonstrate that the Israelites are wrong. The second part of the condition that should occur naturally is not happening, even though the conditional statement is true.

## Translation Strategies

If using the form of a hypothetical condition is confusing or would make the reader think that the speaker doubts what he is saying in the first part of the sentence, then use a statement instead. Words such as “since” or “you know that ...” or “it is true that ...” can be helpful to make the meaning clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- “If** Yahweh is God, worship him!” (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)
- “It is true that** Yahweh is God, so worship him!”
- “A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?” says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)
- “A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **Since** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **Since** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?”

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:6](#); [1:17](#); [2:3](#))

## Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a goal (purpose) relationship?*

### Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

#### Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison.**  
(Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman's false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian.** (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with “in order to.”

Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes.** Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God's ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean,** and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened,** which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)



The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.’ So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with “and.” Then the word “so” marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
- (2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!” (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!”

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.”

- (2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17bULT)

“... keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**.” or: “... keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**.”

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance.**

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:5](#); [4:2](#); [4:7](#))

## Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the reason-result relationship?*

### Reason-and-Result Relationships

#### Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — “I did Y because I wanted X to happen.” But usually it is looking backward — “X happened, and so I did Y.” Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are “because,” “so,” “therefore,” and “for.” Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus!  
(Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. “Because” connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves.  
(Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by “so that.” Notice that the term “so that” often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

“Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God.” (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.
- (2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.
- (3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

- (1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.
- (2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.
- (3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

- (1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.
- (2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.
- (3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

**Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

- (1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.
- (2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.
- (3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:6](#); [2:1](#); [2:8](#); [2:20](#); [3:2](#); [3:17](#); [5:4](#))

## Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

### Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate clauses with a sequential time relationship?*

### Sequential Clause

#### Description

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense (Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a reference point in the context.) Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as “then,” “later,” “after,” “afterward,” “before,” “first,” and “when.” Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

**When** Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders.  
(OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers, and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word “**when**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter. (Revelation 10:10b ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We know this because of the connecting word “**after**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate, and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word “**before**.” However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so that the clauses come in the order that they happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector “**and**” connects four events. These are sequential events—each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general

connector “and” is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.

## Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

- (1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.
- (2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah, **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

- (2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see Sequence of Events.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:24](#))

## Connecting Words and Phrases

### Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to join parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.

**Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

### Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

## The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- [Sequential Clause](#) — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- [Factual Condition](#) — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: Hypothetical Statements.
- [Goal Relationship](#) — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- [Reason and Result Relationship](#) — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- [Contrast Relationship](#) — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

## Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word “instead” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

**Therefore**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “therefore” links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “but” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words “so that” connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).



## General Translation Strategies

### See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
- (3) Use a different connecting word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so."

Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "instead" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

- (3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

**Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.  
**And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:13](#); [4:1](#))

# Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

## Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase along with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
  - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could distinguish this sister of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
  - This same phrase can be used to give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about how Mary’s sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:

(These usually do not cause any problem in translation.)

■ The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33b ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

■ A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

## Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:

(These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.)

... for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

How can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

## Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
- (2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

>

**Because idols are worthless**, I hate those who serve them.

... for your **righteous** judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

... for your judgments are good **because they are righteous**.

Can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

>

Can Sarah bear a son **even when she is 90 years old**?

I will call on Yahweh, **who is worthy to be praised**. (2 Samuel 22:4a ULT) There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, because **he is worthy to be praised**

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.

You are my Son, **whom I love**. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. **I love you** and I am pleased with you.

**Receiving my love**, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Double Negatives](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:1](#); [2:6](#))

## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-parts-of-speech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

## Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called [litotes](#).

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

## Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

## Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.
- (3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

"For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

"... so that they may be fruitful."

- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

...ἰώτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)

...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law

or:

...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:6](#); [3:6](#))



# Doublet

## Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

## Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

"You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

"He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

"... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, "**Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!**  
We are perishing!"

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:8](#); [1:10](#); [1:19](#); [1:23](#); [2:11](#); [2:18](#); [3:11](#); [3:22](#); [4:7](#); [4:13](#); [4:18](#); [5:2](#); [5:8](#); [5:10](#))

# Ellipsis

## Description

An ellipsis<sup>1</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[<sup>1</sup>] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

## Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples From the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:23](#); [2:7](#); [2:16](#); [3:1](#); [3:9](#); [3:19](#); [3:20](#); [4:11](#); [4:17](#); [5:2](#); [5:9](#))

## Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Description

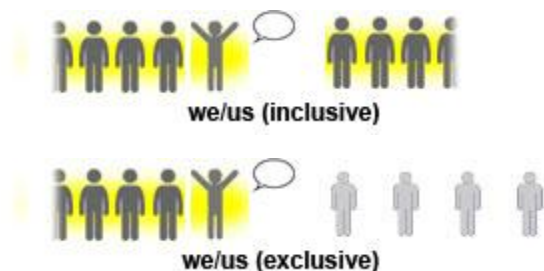
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we,” then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Exclusive

They said, “There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with **us**—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” would use the **exclusive** form there.

**We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

## Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:3](#); [2:24](#); [4:17](#))

## First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”



## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:1](#); [1:16](#); [2:6](#); [4:16](#))

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Peter](#))

## Generic Noun Phrases

### Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?  
So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife;**  
**the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

### Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

- (1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
- (2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
- (3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
- (4) Use the plural form, as in “people.”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

“Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**.” (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:24](#); [2:11](#); [3:7](#); [3:12](#); [4:18](#))

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out')**, and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?"  
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)



It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:



<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Peter](#); [1 Peter 1:1](#); [3:6](#); [5:13](#))



## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

**Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:13](#); [1:14](#); [1:21](#); [2:12](#); [3:1](#); [3:6](#); [3:12](#); [4:14](#); [4:18](#))

# Imperatives — Other Uses

## Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in.” (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

## Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command “Be clean” means to “be healed” so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

“I am willing. **Be clean.**” Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like “light must be.”

## Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

## Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

**Do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;  
**love** her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

**Teach** a child the way he should go,  
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
- (3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

**Be clean.** (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

“You are now clean.”  
“I now cleanse you.”

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, “**There is now light**” and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

God blessed them and said to them, “**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, ‘Let there be light,’ **so** there was light.  
God said, “Light must be;” **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

**If** you teach a child the way he should go,  
**then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.”

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:14](#))

## Information Structure

### Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, "What did Peter paint yesterday?" The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, "his house." Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say "His house is what Peter painted (yesterday)."

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

This page answers the question: *How do languages arrange the parts of a sentence?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, "Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place." (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that “woe” is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.
- (2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

## Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

- (2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food.”

Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

When all men speak well of you, which is just as people’s ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order\]\]](#)  
[Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:3](#); [1:7](#); [1:18](#); [2:15](#); [3:16](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [5:10](#))

# Litotes

## Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a **double negative** is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

## Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)



"For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**."

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

or:

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:9](#))

## Merism

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

"I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God,  
"the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.  
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

**Alpha and omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples From the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

**In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:5](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**.”  
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.”  
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
- (3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
- (4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
- (5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- (6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
- (7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
- (8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart**." (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)



Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:7](#); [1:9](#); [1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [1:22](#); [1:23](#); [1:24](#); [Notes](#); [2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [2:21](#); [2:22](#); [2:24](#); [2:25](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:7](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:15](#); [3:19](#); [4:1](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:10](#); [4:12](#); [4:17](#); [Notes](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#))

# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [1:13](#); [1:19](#); [1:22](#); [1:23](#); [1:24](#); [1:25](#); [2:8](#); [2:11](#); [2:22](#); [2:24](#); [3:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:15](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [3:20](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [4:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:14](#); [5:6](#); [5:12](#))

# Parallelism

## Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

## Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does  
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. “Sees” corresponds to “watches,” “everything...does” corresponds to “all the paths...takes,” and “a person” corresponds to “he.”

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;  
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words ‘Praise’ and ‘exalt’ mean the same thing. The words ‘Yahweh’ and ‘him’ refer to the same person. The terms ‘all you nations’ and ‘all you peoples’ refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,  
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely,” or “all.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet  
(Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:8](#); [3:10](#); [3:14](#))

# Personification

## Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

## Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

**Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

**Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:4](#); [2:6](#); [2:11](#))



# Possession

## Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “**of**,” by using **an apostrophe and the letter “s”**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather **'s** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.
  - The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own
- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
  - The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John
  - A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel
- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
  - The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
  - the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
- Contents — Something has something in it.
  - a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
  - my head — the head that is part of my body
  - the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession**. This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

## Examples From the Bible

**Ownership** — In the example below, the son owned the money.

▮ The younger son ... wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

**Social Relationship** — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

**Association** — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

**Material** — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

**Contents** — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

**Part of a whole** — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace**. (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

**Part of a group** — In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

## Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

**Subject** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

**Object** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

**Instrument** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

**Representation** — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

## Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

- (1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
- (2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
- (3) See what the notes say about it.

## Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

“On their heads were **gold crowns**”

- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink ... will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath**. (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.

or:

Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, “punishment of Yahweh” and “your God.”)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God**. (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)

■ ■ You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you.**

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:11](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [1:24](#); [2:8](#); [2:19](#); [3:4](#); [3:7](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [4:10](#); [4:17](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:10](#))

# Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

This page answers the question: *How do I decide whether or not to use a pronoun?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase “this man.” Then he is referred to with the pronoun “him.”

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

## Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom “he” in the second sentence refers to.

Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)

Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **he** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:6](#); [2:4](#); [2:14](#); [3:3](#); [3:21](#); [5:12](#))

# Quotations and Quote Margins

## Description

This page answers the question: *What are quote margins and where should I put them?*

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, "The food is ready. Come and eat."
- "The food is ready. Come and eat," **she said**.
- "The food is ready," **she said**. "Come and eat."

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning "said."

But his mother **answered** and **said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (" "). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning "said."
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

## Examples From the Bible

### Quote margin before the quote

**Then Zechariah said to the angel**, "How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days." (Luke 1:18 ULT)

Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, "Teacher, what should we do?" (Luke 3:12 ULT)

So **he said to them**, "Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered." (Luke 3:13 ULT)

### Quote margin after the quote

Yahweh relented concerning this. "It will not happen," **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

### Quote margin between two parts of the quote

"I will hide my face from them," **he said**, "and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful." (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh’s declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
- (2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

**He said**, “Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.

“Therefore, those who can,” **he said**, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

- (2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

But his mother **answered and said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

But his mother **replied**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”

But his mother **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”

But his mother **answered** like this. “No. Rather, he will be called John,” she **said**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotations\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:16](#); [1:24](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [3:10](#); [4:18](#); [5:5](#))



## Quote Markings

### Description

Some languages use quotation marks to mark off direct quotes from the rest of the text. English uses the mark " immediately before a quote and " immediately after it.

- John said, "I do not know when I will arrive."

Quotation marks are not used with indirect quotes.

- John said that he did not know when he would arrive.

When there are several layers of quotations inside of other quotations, it might be hard for readers to understand who is saying what. Alternating two kinds of quotation marks can help careful readers to keep track of them. In English, the outermost quotation has double quote marks, and the next quotation within it has single marks. If there is a third embedded quote, that quotation again has double quotation marks.

- Mary said, "John said, 'I do not know when I will arrive.'"
- Bob said, "Mary told me, 'John said, "I do not know when I will arrive.'"

Some languages use other kinds of quotation marks: Here are some examples: , ' ' " " < > « » 7 — .

### Examples From the Bible

The examples below show the kind of quotation markings used in the ULT.

#### A quotation with only one layer

A first layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it.

So the king replied, "That is Elijah the Tishbite." (2 Kings 1:8b ULT)

#### Quotations with two layers

A second layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it and the phrase in bold type for you to see them clearly.

They asked him, "Who is the man who said to you, '**Pick it up and walk**'?" (John 5:12 ULT)

He sent two of the disciples, saying, "Go into the village ahead of you. As you enter, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me. If any one asks you, '**Why are you untying it?**'" you will say thus, '**The Lord has need of it.**'" (Luke 19:29b-31 ULT)

#### A quotation with three layers

A third layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold type for you to see them clearly.

Abraham said, "Because I thought, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me because of my wife.' Besides, she is indeed my sister, the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother; and she became my wife. When God caused me to leave my father's

This page answers the question: *How can quotes be marked, especially when there are quotes within quotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotations\]\]](https://en.ta/man/translate/figs-quotations)

house and travel from place to place, I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "**He is my brother.**"' (Genesis 20:11-13 ULT)

## A quotation with four layers

A fourth layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold for you to see it clearly.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: '**Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.**' " " " (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

## Quote Marking Strategies

Here are some ways you may be able to help readers see where each quote starts and ends so they can more easily know who said what.

- (1) Alternate two kinds of quote marks to show layers of direct quotation. English alternates double quote marks and single quote marks.
- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quote marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)
- (3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

## Examples of Quote Marking Strategies Applied

- (1) Alternate two kinds of quotation marks to show layers of direct quotation as shown in the ULT text below.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

- (2) Translate one or more of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quotation marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. In English, the word "that" can introduce an indirect quote. In the example below, everything after the word "that" is an indirect quote of what the messengers said to the king. Within that indirect quote, there are some direct quotes marked with double and single quotation marks.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man came to meet them who said to them, "Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, 'Yahweh says this: "Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"'"

- (3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They said to him,

A man came to meet us who said to us, "Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, 'Yahweh says this: "Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'""

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:24](#); [1:25](#); [2:3](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [2:22](#); [2:24](#); [3:10](#); [3:12](#); [3:14](#); [4:18](#); [5:5](#))

## Reflexive Pronouns

### Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

### Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

### Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

**He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:24](#))

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **"Are you insulting the high priest of God?"**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)



Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed ...

**Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

**Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

**And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:20](#); [3:13](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#))

# Simile

## Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

## Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

## Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:19](#); [1:24](#); [2:2](#); [2:5](#); [2:25](#); [Notes](#); [5:8](#))

# Statements — Other Uses

## Description

Normally statements are used to give information. Sometimes they are used in the Bible for other functions.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use a statement for some of the functions that statements are used for in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Statements are normally used to give **information**. All of the sentences in John 1:6-8 below are statements, and their function is to give information.

There was a man who was sent from God, whose name was John. He came as a witness in order to testify about the light, that all might believe through him. John was not the light, but came that he might testify about the light. (John 1:6-8 ULT)

A statement can also be used as a **command** to tell someone what to do. In the examples below, the high priest used statements with the verb “will” to tell people what to do.

He commanded them, saying, “This is what you **must** do. A third of you who come on the Sabbath **will** keep watch over the king’s house, and a third **will** be at the Sur Gate, and a third at the gate behind the guardhouse.” (2 Kings 11:5 ULT)

A statement can also be used to give **instructions**. The speaker below was not just telling Joseph about something Joseph would do in the future; he was telling Joseph what he needed to do.

She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

A statement can also be used to make a **request**. The man with leprosy was not just saying what Jesus was able to do. He was also asking Jesus to heal him.

Behold, a leper came to him and bowed before him, saying, “Lord, if you are willing, **you can make me clean.**” (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

A statement can also be used to **perform** something. By telling Adam that the ground was cursed because of him, God actually cursed it.

... **cursed is the ground** because of you; (Genesis 3:17b ULT)

By telling a man that his sins were forgiven, **Jesus forgave** the man’s sins.

When Jesus saw their faith, he said to the paralyzed man, “**Son, your sins are forgiven.**” (Mark 2:5 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

(1) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **use a sentence type** that would express that function.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for statements?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

(2) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **add a sentence type** that would express that function.

(3) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **use a verb form** that would express that function.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a sentence type that would express that function.

She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

The phrase “you will call his name Jesus” is an instruction. It can be translated using the sentence type of a normal instruction.

She will give birth to a son. **Name him Jesus**, because he will save his people from their sins.

(2) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, add a sentence type that would express that function.

Lord, **please heal me**, because I know you are able to heal me if you are willing to. (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

The function of “I know you can” is to make a request. In addition to the statement, a request can be added.

Lord, **I know you can heal me**. If you are willing, please do so.

Lord, if you are willing, please heal me. **I know you can do so**.

(3) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a verb form that would express that function.

She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

She will give birth to a son, and **you must call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins.

Son, your sins are forgiven. (Mark 2:5 ULT)

Son, I forgive your sins.

Son, God has forgiven your sins.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:3](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [1:16](#); [2:1](#); [2:12](#))

# Symbolic Action

## Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

## Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

## Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:14](#))



# Symbolic Language

## Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

■ Eat this scroll; then go speak to the house of Israel. (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of Ezekiel reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

## Purposes of Symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

## Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

## Examples From the Bible

■ After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the bolded symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

■ This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

■ I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man ... He had **seven**

**stars** in his right hand and **a sword with two sharp edges** was coming out of his mouth. As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12-13a, 16a, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, <sup>1</sup> terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; <sup>2</sup> it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. <sup>3</sup>

The footnotes would look like:

[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.

[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.

[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:13](#))

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:9](#); [1:22](#); [2:24](#); [2:25](#); [3:10](#); [3:12](#); [4:19](#))

## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

### Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] <sup>[2]</sup>

<sup>[2]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." <sup>16</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." <sup>16</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Peter](#))

## Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

## Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

## Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

## Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

■ Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

■ Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

■ "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.



Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:15](#))

## Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

### Biblical Witness

**“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and ... a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus ... said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth ... no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son.**” (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

**I love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)

**No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son.** (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you ... I glorified you on the earth ... Now Father, glorify me ... with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made.**” (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory and **the very exact representation of his being.** He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father?’” (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod]]

## Human Relationships

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.**

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human “father” and “son.” In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

## Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”

(2) If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).

(3) If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

(See *God the Father and Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating “Father” and “Son.”)

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2; 1:3](#))

## When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[Generic Noun Phrases](#)

### Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

A wise son makes **his** father rejoice  
but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

### Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

### Examples From the Bible

Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

**Caution:** Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

- (1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)

“The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”

“Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia.”

- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

“If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.”  
(Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

>

“If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:22](#); [2:4](#); [3:8](#); [4:2](#); [4:6](#); [5:12](#))



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 32**

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, [Sarah](#), Isaac)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:6](#))

## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:8](#))



## **amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded**

### **Definition:**

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: miracle, sign)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:9](#))

## amen, truly

### Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0543, G02810

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:11](#); [5:11](#))

## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chief, [head](#), messenger, Michael, ruler, [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:12](#); [3:22](#))

## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

### Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:1](#))

## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:8](#))

# ark

## Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, basket)

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:6
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H8392, G27870

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:20](#))

# Asia

## Facts:

In Bible times, “Asia” was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, “the ancient Roman province called Asia” or “Asia Province.”
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Rome, Paul, Ephesus)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 2 Timothy 1:15-18
- Acts 6:8-9
- Acts 16:7
- Acts 27:1-2
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Romans 16:5

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G07730

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:1](#))



## astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray

### Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:7
- 2 Timothy 3:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:5
- Psalms 58:3
- Psalms 119:110

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G41050, G53510

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:25](#))

## authority

### Definition:

The term “authority” usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: dominion, [king](#), ruler, [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 3:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G08310, G14130, G18490, G18500, G20030, G27150, G52470

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:22](#))

# Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

## Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:13](#))

## baptize, baptized, baptism

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: John (the Baptist), repent, [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:38
- Acts 8:36
- Acts 9:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:3** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:7** John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?”
- **46:5** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G09070

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:21](#))

## bear, bearer, carry

### Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: burden, Elisha, [endure](#), fruit, iniquity, report, [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 3:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G01420, G04300, G09410, G10800, G16270, G25920, G31400, G41600, G47220, G48280, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090, G55760

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:24](#))

# believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

## Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), disciple, [faith](#), trust)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350



(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:8](#); [1:21](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#))

## beloved

### Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:14
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 John 4:7
- Mark 1:11
- Mark 12:6
- Revelation 20:9
- Romans 16:8
- Song of Songs 1:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G00250, G00270, G52070

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:11](#); [4:12](#))

## blemish, unblemished, defect

### Facts:

The term “blemish” refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

- For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
- This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
- Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
- Ways to translate this term could include “defect” or “imperfection” or “sin,” depending on the context.

(See also: [believe](#), clean, [sacrifice](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:19
- 2 Peter 2:13
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Song of Songs 4:7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3971, H8400, H8549, G34700

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:19](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”

- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:3](#); [3:9](#); [3:14](#); [4:14](#))

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [1:19](#))

## body

### Definition:

The term “body” refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or to a group consisting of individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [hand](#); [face](#); [loins](#); [righthand](#); [tongue](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- Ephesians 4:4
- Judges 14:8
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Psalm 31:9
- Romans 12:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G44300, G49540, G49830, G55590

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:24](#))



## born again, born of God, new birth

### Definition:

The term “born again” was first used by Jesus to describe what it means for God to change a person from being dead spiritually to being alive spiritually. The terms “born of God” and “born of the Spirit” also refer to a person being given new spiritual life.

- All humans are born spiritually dead and are given a “new birth” when they accept Jesus Christ as their Savior.
- At the moment of the spiritual new birth, God’s Holy Spirit begins to live in the new believer and empowers him to produce good spiritual fruit in his life.
- It is God’s work to cause a person to be born again and become his child.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “born again” could include “born anew” or “born spiritually.”
- It is best to translate this term literally and use the normal word in the language that would be used for being born.
- The term “new birth” might be translated as “spiritual birth.”
- The phrase “born of God” could be translated as “caused by God to have new life like a newborn baby” or “given new life by God.”
- In the same way, “born of the Spirit” could be translated as “given new life by the Holy Spirit” or “empowered by the Holy Spirit to become God’s child” or “caused by the Spirit to have new life like a newborn baby.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:9
- 1 Peter 1:3
- 1 Peter 1:23
- John 3:4
- John 3:7
- Titus 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G03130, G05090, G10800, G38240

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:3](#); [1:23](#))

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:17](#); [5:9](#); [5:12](#))

## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), cry)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:15](#); [1:17](#); [2:9](#); [2:21](#); [3:6](#); [3:9](#); [5:10](#))

## children, child, offspring

### Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, [seed](#), promise, [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:14](#); [2:2](#); [3:6](#))

## chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

### Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:1](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [2:9](#); [5:13](#))

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Son of God, David, [Jesus](#), anoint)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.



- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:7](#); [1:11](#); [1:13](#); [1:19](#); [2:5](#); [2:21](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [3:18](#); [3:21](#); [4:1](#); [4:11](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [5:1](#); [5:10](#); [5:14](#))

# Christian

## Definition:

Some time after Jesus went back to heaven, people made up the name “Christian” which means “follower of Christ.”

- It was in the city of Antioch where Jesus’ followers were first called “Christians.”
- A Christian is a person who believes that Jesus is the Son of God, and who trusts Jesus to save him from his sins.
- In our modern times, often the term “Christian” is used for someone who identifies with the Christian religion, but who is not really following Jesus. This is not the meaning of “Christian” in the Bible.
- Because the term “Christian” in the Bible always refers to someone who truly believes in Jesus, a Christian is also called a “believer.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “Christ-follower” or “follower of Christ” or perhaps something like, “Christ-person.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is translated differently than terms used for disciple or apostle.
- Be careful to translate this term with a word that can refer to everyone who believes in Jesus, not just certain groups.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: Antioch, [Christ](#), church, disciple, [believe](#), [Jesus](#), Son of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:7-8
- 1 Peter 4:16
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 26:28

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:9** It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called “**Christians**.”
- **47:14** Paul and other **Christian** leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **49:15** If you believe in Jesus and what he has done for you, you are a **Christian**!
- **49:16** If you are a **Christian**, God has forgiven your sins because of what Jesus did.
- **49:17** Even though you are a **Christian**, you will still be tempted to sin.
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told **Christians** to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it.
- **50:11** When Jesus returns, every **Christian** who has died will rise from the dead and meet him in the sky.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: G55460

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:16](#))

## clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

### Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G02940, G14630, G15620, G17370, G17420, G17460, G19020, G20660, G22240, G24390, G24400, G40160, G47490, G55090

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:3](#); [5:5](#))

## commit, committed, commitment

### Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: adultery, [faithful](#), promise, [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:7
- 1 Peter 2:21-23
- Jeremiah 2:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 58:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G02640, G20380, G27160, G34290, G34310, G38600, G38720, G39080, G41020, G41600, G42030

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:23](#))

## compassion, compassionate

### Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "deep caring" or "pity" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

### Bible References:

- Daniel 1:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 5:9-11
- Jonah 4:1-3
- Mark 1:41
- Romans 9:14-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G16530, G33560, G36270, G46970, G48340, G48350

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:8](#))

## confirm, confirmation, legal

### Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: covenant, oath, trust)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 6:16-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G09500, G09510, G33150, G49720

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:10](#))

## conscience

### Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:19
- 1 Timothy 3:9
- 2 Corinthians 5:11
- 2 Timothy 1:3
- Romans 9:1
- Titus 1:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G48930

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:19](#); [3:16](#); [3:21](#))

## cornerstone

### Definition:

The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building’s foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:11
- Ephesians 2:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H6438, H7218, G02040, G11370, G27760, G30370

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2 General Notes](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#))



## create, created, creation, creator

### Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:19](#))

## crown, crowned

### Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), olive)

### Bible References:

- John 19:3
- Lamentations 5:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 4:1
- Psalms 21:3
- Revelation 3:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G12380, G47350, G47370

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:4](#))

## cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

### Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle)

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:16
- Acts 8:6
- Luke 5:13
- Luke 6:19
- Luke 8:43
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 9:35
- Matthew 13:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:6** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **26:8** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **44:3** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **49:2** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H0622, G12950, G17430, G23220, G23230, G23860, G23900, G23920, G25110, G36470, G49820, G51980, G51990

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:24](#))

## darkness

### Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, kingdom, [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:6
- 1 John 2:8
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 1:13
- Isaiah 5:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 8:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0652, H0653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G22170, G46520, G46530, G46550, G46560

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:9](#))

# day

## Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [time](#), judgment day, [last day](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:12](#); [3:10](#); [3:20](#))

## day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

### Description:

The Old Testament term “day of Yahweh” is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term “day of the Lord” usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection is also sometimes referred to as the “last day.” This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word “day” in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a “time” or “occasion” that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a “pouring out of God’s wrath” upon those who do not believe.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “day of Yahweh” could include “time of Yahweh” or “time when Yahweh will punish his enemies” or “time of Yahweh’s wrath.”
- Other ways to translate “day of the Lord” could include “time of the Lord’s judgment” or “time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people.”

(See also: [day](#), judgment day, [Lord](#), [resurrection](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 Thessalonians 5:2
- 2 Peter 3:10
- 2 Thessalonians 2:2
- Acts 2:20-21
- Philippians 1:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3068, H3117, G22500, G29620

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:5](#))

## deceive, lie, deception, illusions

### Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a "lie." The act of deceiving someone is called "lying," "deceit," or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To "lie" is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:1](#); [2:22](#); [3:10](#))



# devour

## Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

(See also: consume)

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:8](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death

## Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

## 1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

## 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:3](#); [1:21](#); [3:18](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#))

## disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

### Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 3:7
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 6:49
- Psalms 89:30-32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:11** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **13:7** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4784, H5674, G05060, G05430, G05440, G05450, G38470, G38760

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:8](#); [3:1](#); [3:20](#); [4:17](#))

## disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed

### Definition:

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: [believe](#), persecute, captive, [exile](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:1
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 30:23
- Psalms 18:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2219, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G12870, G12900, G46500

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:1](#))

## drunk, drunkard

### Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:3](#))

## elder, older, old

### Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:1](#); [5:5](#))

## endure, endurance

### Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- James 1:3
- James 1:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G04300, G09070, G15260, G20050, G20760, G25940, G33060, G47220, G52780, G52810, G52970, G53420

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:19](#); [2:20](#); [5:9](#))



## envy, covet

### Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: jealous)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:1](#))

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1 General Notes](#); [1:25](#); [4:11](#); [5:10](#); [5:11](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:1](#); [2:16](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:17](#); [Notes](#))

## evildoer, evildoing

### Definition:

The term “evildoer” is a general reference to people who do sinful and wicked things.

- It can also be a general word for people who do not obey God.
- This term could be translated using the word for “evil” or “wicked,” with the word for “doing” or “making” or “causing” something.

(See also: [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 2:13-17
- Isaiah 9:16-17
- Luke 13:25-27
- Malachi 3:13-15
- Matthew 7:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H6213, H6466, H7451, H7489, G00930, G04580, G20380, G20400, G25550

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:12](#); [2:14](#); [4:15](#))

## ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: Israel, [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2 General Notes](#); 2:25)

## exalt, exalted, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), worship, [glory](#), boast, [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:6](#))



## exhort, exhortation

### Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 1 Timothy 5:2
- Luke 3:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G38670, G38700, G38740, G43890

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:11](#); [5:1](#); [5:12](#))

## exile, exiled

### Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 2:25-26
- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G39270

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:1](#); [2:11](#))

## exult, exultant

### Definition:

The terms “exult” and “exultant” refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To “exult” includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God’s goodness.
- The term “exultant” can also include being arrogant in one’s feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term “exult” could also be translated as “celebrate joyfully” or “praise with great joy.”
- Depending on the context, the term “exultant” could be translated as “praising triumphantly” or “celebrating with self praise” or “arrogant.”

(See also: arrogant, [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:1
- Isaiah 13:3
- Job 6:10
- Psalm 68:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5539, H5947, H5970

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:8](#); [4:13](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:12](#))

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:5](#); [1:7](#); [1:9](#); [1:21](#); [5:9](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:19](#); [5:12](#))



## faithless, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

### Definition:

The term “faithless” means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God. Their lack of belief is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “faithless” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “unbelieving” or “disobedient to God” or “not believing.”
- The term “faithlessness” could be translated as “unbelief” or “unfaithfulness” or “rebellion against God.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [disobey](#), adultery)

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezra 9:1-2
- Jeremiah 2:19
- Proverbs 2:22
- Revelation 21:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G05710

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:7](#))

## fear, afraid, frighten

### Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, Yahweh, [Lord](#), [marvel](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:17](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [3:6](#); [3:14](#); [3:16](#))

## fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:7](#); [4:12](#))

# flesh

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

## Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:24](#); [2:11](#); [3:18](#); [3:21](#); [4:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:6](#))

## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

### Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: goat, cow, pig, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:2](#); [5:3](#))

## fool, foolish, folly

### Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise)

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:17
- Ephesians 5:15
- Galatians 3:3
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 25:8
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 49:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0191, H0196, H0200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G04530, G04540, G07810, G08010, G08770, G08780, G27570, G31500, G31540, G34710, G34720, G34730, G34740, G39120

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:15](#))

## foreknew, foreknowledge

### Definition:

The terms “foreknew” and “foreknowledge” come from the verb “foreknow” which means to know something before it happens.

- God is not limited by time. He knows everything that happens in the past, present, and future.
- This word is often used in the context of God knowing already who will be saved through receiving Jesus as Savior.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “foreknew” could also be translated as “knew before” or “knew ahead of time” or “knew beforehand” or “already knew.”
- The term “foreknowledge” could be translated as “knowing before” or “knowing ahead of time” or “already knowing” or “knowing in advance.”

(See also: [know](#), predestine)

### Bible References:

- Romans 8:29
- Romans 11:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G42670, G42680

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [1:20](#))

## found, founder, foundation

### Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:20](#); [Notes](#); [5:10](#))



## free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

### Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:16](#))

## Galatia, Galatians

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea, which was to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Cilicia, and Pamphylia.
- The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called "Galatians."
- One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
- The Jewish Christians there were incorrectly teaching the Gentile Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [believe](#), Cilicia, [good news](#), Paul, [works](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:1-2
- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 2 Timothy 4:9-10
- Acts 16:6-8
- Galatians 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G10530, G10540

([Go back to: 1 Peter 1:1](#))

# Gentile

## Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Jew)

## Bible References:

- Acts 9:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 2:16
- Luke 2:32
- Matthew 5:47
- Matthew 6:5-7
- Romans 11:25

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1471, G14820, G14840, G16720

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:12](#); [4:3](#))

## gift

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1
- 2 Samuel 11:8
- Acts 8:20
- Acts 10:4
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 1:17
- John 4:9-10
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 8:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G03340, G13900, G13940, G14310, G14340, G14350, G33110, G54860

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:10](#))

## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), majesty, [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:11](#); [1:21](#); [1:24](#); [2:12](#); [4:11](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [4:16](#); [5:1](#); [5:4](#); [5:10](#))

# God

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:5](#); [1:21](#); [1:23](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:10](#); [2:12](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [3:20](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [4:2](#); [4:6](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:14](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [4:19](#); [5:2](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#))



## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ancestor, [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), Son of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:17](#))

## god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:3](#))

## godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

### Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also [evil](#), [honor](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:9
- Acts 3:12
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 1 Timothy 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 4:18
- Jude 1:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G05160, G07630, G07640, G07650, G21240, G21500, G21520, G21530, G23160, G23170

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4 General Notes](#); 4:18)

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, temple)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:7](#); [1:18](#); [3:3](#))

## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: kingdom, [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.



## Word Data:

- Strong's: G20970, G20980, G42830

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:12](#); [4:6](#); [4:17](#))

## good, right, pleasant, better, best

### Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), prosper, [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:12](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:18](#); [2:20](#); [3:6](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [3:21](#); [4:10](#))

## **govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha**

### **Definition:**

A “governor” is a person who rules over a large area of land (such as a territory, region, or province) within a nation or empire.

- In the Old Testament, the term “Tirshatha” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Persian province.
- In the New Testament, the term “proconsul” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or “supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), province, Rome, ruler)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G04450, G04460, G07460, G14810, G22320, G22330, G22300, G42320

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:14](#))

## grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [1:10](#); [1:13](#); [3:7](#); [4:10](#); [5:5](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#))

# hand

## Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

## Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [power](#), [right hand](#), [honor](#), [bless](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:6](#))

# head

## Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: chief, grain)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:7](#))



# heart

## Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

## Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:22](#); [3:4](#); [3:15](#))

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:4](#); [1:12](#); [3:22](#))

# heir

## Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, [inherit](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:7
- Genesis 15:1
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:7
- Matthew 21:38-39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G28160, G28180, G28200, G47890

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:7](#))

# Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

## Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), Son of God, [gift](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**”
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#); [4:14](#))

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, [sanctify](#), set apart)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1 General Notes](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [2:5](#); [2:9](#); [3:5](#))



# honor

## Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:7](#); [2:7](#); [2:17](#); [3:7](#))

## hope, hoped

### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), confidence, [good](#), [obey](#), trust, [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G00910, G05600, G16790, G16800, G20700

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:3](#); [1:21](#); [3:5](#); [3:15](#))

## house, household

### Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: descendant, house of God, tabernacle, temple, house of David, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:5](#))

# household

## Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 7:10
- Galatians 6:10
- Genesis 7:1
- Genesis 34:19
- John 4:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 4:22

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G23220, G36090, G36140, G36150, G36160, G36230, G36240

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:17](#))

## humble, humbled, humility

### Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:8](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#))

## hypocrite, hypocrisy

### Definition:

The term “hypocrite” refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term “hypocrisy” refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages have an expression like “two-faced” that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
- Other ways to translate “hypocrite” could include “fraud” or “pretender” or “arrogant, deceitful person.”
- The term “hypocrisy” could be translated by, “deception” or “fake actions” or “pretending.”

### Bible References:

- Galatians 2:13
- Luke 6:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15
- Mark 7:6-7
- Matthew 6:1-2
- Romans 12:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, H2611, H2612, G05050, G52720, G52730

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:1](#))

## in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

### Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:5
- 2 Corinthians 2:17
- 2 Timothy 1:1
- Galatians 1:22
- Galatians 2:17
- Philemon 1:6
- Revelation 1:10
- Romans 9:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G15190, G29620, G55470

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:16](#); [5:10](#); [5:14](#))

## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), Canaan, Promised Land, [possess](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200



(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:4](#); [3:9](#))

## it is written

### Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, law, [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 9:12
- Matthew 4:6
- Revelation 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G11250

([Go back to: 1 Peter 1:16](#))

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."

- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:7](#); [1:13](#); [2:5](#); [3:21](#); [4:11](#))

## John Mark

### Facts:

John Mark, also known as "Mark," was one of the men who traveled with Paul on his missionary journeys. He is most likely the author of the Gospel of Mark.

- John Mark accompanied his cousin Barnabas and Paul on their first missionary journey.
- When Peter was put in prison in Jerusalem, the believers there were praying for him at John Mark's mother's house.
- Mark was not an apostle, but was taught by both Paul and Peter and worked together with them in ministry.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Barnabas, Paul)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Acts 12:24-25
- Acts 13:5
- Acts 13:13
- Acts 15:36-38
- Acts 15:39-41
- Colossians 4:10-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24910, G31380

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:13](#))

## joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

### Definition:

#### joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:6](#); [1:8](#); [4:13](#))

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, law)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”



- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:17](#); [2:23](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:17](#))

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, guilt, [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:23](#))

## king, kingship

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:13](#); [2:17](#))

# kiss

## Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G27050, G53680, G53700

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:14](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, [reveal](#), [understand](#), wise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:18](#); [5:9](#))

## lamb, Lamb of God

### Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.



- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G07210, G23160

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:19](#))

## last day, latter days

### Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [judge](#), [turn](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 1:2
- Isaiah 2:2
- James 5:3
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 4:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H3117, G20780, G22500

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:5](#); [1:20](#))

# life, live, living, alive

## Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

## 1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

## 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:3](#); [1:23](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:24](#); [3:7](#); [3:10](#); [4:2](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#))

## light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten

### Definition:

The term “light” is used figuratively in various ways in the Bible. Light is often used as a metaphor for wisdom, life, righteousness, truth, or happiness.

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), wisdom, [life](#), [righteous](#), [true](#), [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 John 2:8
- 2 Corinthians 4:6
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 2:5
- John 1:5
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 6:23
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0216, H0217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G06810, G07960, G16450, G29850, G30880, G53380, G54570, G54580, G54600, G54620

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:9](#))

## like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

### Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:5
- Mark 8:24
- Matthew 17:2
- Matthew 18:3
- Psalms 73:5
- Revelation 1:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G15030, G15040, G25090, G25310, G25960, G36640, G36650, G36660, G36670, G36680, G36690, G36970, G48330, G51080, G56130, G56150, G56160, G56180, G56190

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:14](#); [1:19](#); [1:24](#); [2:2](#); [2:5](#); [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:16](#); [2:25](#); [3:1](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [5:3](#); [5:5](#); [5:8](#); [5:12](#))

## lion, lioness

### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 7:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 17:12
- Revelation 5:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0738, H0739, H0744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G30230

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:8](#))

## loins, waist

### Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: euphemism)
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: euphemism)
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, gird, [children](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- 2 Chronicles 6:9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G37510

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:13](#))



## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), ruler, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:3](#); [1:25](#); [2:3](#); [2:13](#); [2:18](#); [3:6](#); [3:12](#); [3:15](#))

## love, beloved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:8](#); [1:22](#); [2:17](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [4:8](#); [5:14](#))

# lust, lustful, passions, desires

## Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."

(See also: adultery, [false god](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 Timothy 2:22
- Galatians 5:16
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 5:28

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0183, H0185, H0310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G07660, G19370, G19390, G22370, G37150, G38060

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:14](#); [2:11](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#))

## manager, steward, stewardship

### Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:4-5
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 8:3
- Luke 16:2
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 1:7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G20120, G36210, G36230

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:10](#))

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), forgive)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:3](#); [2:10](#))



## might, mighty, mighty works

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “mighty” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, [power](#), [strength](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:11](#); [5:6](#); [5:11](#))

## mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

### Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 6:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 4:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G12710, G13740, G33280, G35250, G35400, G35630, G49930, G55900

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:13](#); [4:1](#); [4:7](#))

## **multiply, multiplied, multiplication**

### **Definition:**

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#))

## name

### Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:14](#); [4:16](#))

# nation

## Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, [Babylon](#), Canaan, [Gentile](#), Greek, [people group](#), Philistines, Rome)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:9](#))

# Noah

## Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: descendant, [ark](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 5:30-31
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:8
- Genesis 8:1
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **3:4** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **3:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, "You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth." So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G35750

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:20](#))

## obey, keep

### Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal. In the Bible, often the term “keep” means “to obey.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, [disobey](#), kingdom, law)

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:32
- Acts 6:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 1:25
- James 2:10
- Luke 6:47
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **5:6** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **5:10** “Because you (Abraham) have *\_obeyed\_* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **5:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:7** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G01910, G39800, G39820, G50830, G50840, G52180, G52190, G52550, G52920, G52930, G54420

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [1:14](#); [1:22](#); [3:6](#))



## oversee, overseer, keeper

### Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people. In the Bible, often the term “keeper” means “overseer.”

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

### Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, [elder](#), pastor, [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 3:2
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G19830, G19840, G19850

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:25](#); [5:2](#))

## patient, patience, impatient

### Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), forgive, persevere)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- 2 Peter 3:8-9
- Hebrews 6:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 37:7
- Revelation 2:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0750, H0753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G04200, G04630, G19330, G31140, G31150, G31160, G52780, G52810

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:20](#))

# peace, peaceful, peacemakers

## Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [3:11](#); [5:14](#))

## people of God

### Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: Israel, [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:10](#))

## people, people group

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), tribe, [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:9](#); [2:10](#))

## perfect, complete

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be “perfect” or “complete,” that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

(See also: [blemish](#))

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:10](#))

# perish

## Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

## Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:7](#); [1:18](#); [1:23](#))



## **perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, dishonest, distortion**

### **Definition:**

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “Perverse speech” could be translated as “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “Perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: corrupt, [deceive](#), [disobey](#), [evil](#), [turn](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 8:47
- 1 Samuel 20:30
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:2
- Psalms 101:4-6

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1942, H2015, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G12940

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:18](#))

## Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: disciple, [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:25
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 3:16
- Matthew 4:18-20
- Matthew 8:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **28:9 Peter** said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
- **29:1** One day **Peter** asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
- **31:5** Then **Peter** said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told **Peter**, "Come!"
- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, **Peter**, James, and John with him.
- **38:9 Peter** replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to **Peter**, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, **Peter**, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."
- **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, **Peter** pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- **43:11 Peter** answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **44:8 Peter** answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G27860, G40740, G46130

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Peter](#); [1 Peter 1:1](#))

## Pontus

### Facts:

Pontus was a Roman province during the time of the Roman Empire and the early Church. It was located along the southern coast of the Black Sea, in the northern part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- As recorded in the book of Acts, people from the province of Pontus were in Jerusalem when the Holy Spirit first came to the apostles on the Day of Pentecost.
- A believer named Aquila was from Pontus.
- When Peter was writing to Christians who were scattered into different regions, Pontus was one of the regions he mentioned.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aquila, Pentecost)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- Acts 2:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G41930, G41950

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:1](#))

## possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship, [inherit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:9](#))

## power, powerful, powerfully

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [strength](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Colossians 1:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 1:25
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 3:21
- Psalm 80:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G14110, G14150, G17540, G17560, G18490, G18500, G21590, G24780, G24790, G29040, G31680

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:5](#); [3:22](#))

## praise, praised, praiseworthy

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: worship)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:7](#); [2:14](#))

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:7](#); [3:12](#); [4:7](#))



## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: declare, [good news](#), [Jesus](#), kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:9](#); [3:19](#))

## precious, valuable, expensive, fine

### Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:1
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 1:7
- Luke 7:2-5
- Psalms 36:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H1431, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H8443, G09270, G17840, G24720, G41850, G41860, G50920, G50930

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:19](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [3:4](#))

## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:5](#); [2:9](#))

## prison, prisoner, imprison

### Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:4
- Ephesians 4:1
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 6:17
- Matthew 5:26
- Matthew 14:3
- Matthew 25:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0612, H0613, H0615, H0616, H0631, H0953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G11980, G11990, G12000, G12010, G12020, G12100, G22520, G36120, G47880, G48690, G50840, G54380, G54390

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:19](#))

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:10](#))



## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, [humble](#), [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:5](#))

## pure, purify, purification

### Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:22](#); [2:2](#); [3:2](#))

## raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

### Definition:

#### raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:21](#))

## receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5
- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:9](#); [4:10](#); [5:4](#))

## redeem, redeemer, redemption

### Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: [free](#), ransom)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:18](#))



# reject, rejected, rejection

## Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: command, [disobey](#), [obey](#), stiff-necked)

## Bible References:

- Galatians 4:12-14
- Hosea 4:6-7
- Isaiah 41:9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 7:9

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0947, H0959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G01140, G04830, G05500, G05790, G05800, G05930, G06830, G07200, G16090, G38680

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:4](#); [2:7](#))

## resurrection

### Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 3:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 5:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 3:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G03860, G14540, G18150

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:3](#); [3:21](#))

## reveal, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), dream, vision)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 3:5
- Galatians 1:12
- Lamentations 2:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 3:15
- Revelation 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0241, H1540, H1541, G06010, G06020, G55370

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:5](#); [1:7](#); [1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:20](#); [4:13](#); [5:1](#); [5:4](#))

## revere, revered, reverence, reverent

### Definition:

The term “reverence” refers to feelings of profound, deep respect for someone or something. “Revere” someone or something is to show reverence towards that person or thing.

- Feelings of reverence can be seen in actions that honor the person who is revered.
- The fear of the Lord is an inner reverence that manifests itself in obedience to God’s commandments.
- This term could also be translated as “fear and honor” or “sincere respect.”

(See also: [fear](#), [honor](#), [obey](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:15-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- Isaiah 44:17
- Psalms 5:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3372, H3373, H3374, H4172, H6342, H7812, G01270, G17880, G21250, G24120, G53990, G54010

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:2](#))

## right hand

### Definition:

The term “right hand” refers to the hand on the right side of a person’s body. In the Bible, the term is often used figuratively to refer to other body parts on a person’s right side, to the direction of a person’s right, to the direction south, or to a place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand can be used figuratively as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: accuse, [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), punish, rebel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:33
- Colossians 3:1
- Galatians 2:9
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 2:3
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 44:3
- Revelation 2:1-2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G11880

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:22](#))

# righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

## Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

## Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, law, [obey](#), [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:24](#); [3:12](#); [3:14](#); [3:18](#); [4:18](#))



## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering, peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, worship)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:5](#))

## sanctify, sanctification

### Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, [holy](#), set apart)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Genesis 2:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 6:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6942, G00370, G00380

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:2](#); [3:15](#))

## Sarah, Sarai

### Facts:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Isaac)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 11:30
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 17:15
- Genesis 25:9-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:1** So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **5:4** "Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son—he will be the son of promise."
- **5:4** God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess."
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8283, H8297, G45640

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:6](#))

## Satan, devil, evil one

### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: demon, [evil](#), kingdom of God, tempt)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.

- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:8](#))

## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, [sin](#), Savior)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:5](#); [1:9](#); [1:10](#); [2:2](#); [3:20](#); [3:21](#); [4:18](#))



## seed, semen

### Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: [children](#), descendant)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:23](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:10](#); [3:11](#); [5:8](#))

## send, sent, send out

### Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commissioned me.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#), [castout](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:33-34
- Acts 8:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 9:37-38
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G07820, G03750, G06300, G06490, G06520, G06570, G10260, G10320, G15440, G15990, G18210, G33330, G33430, G39360, G39920, G43110, G43410, G43690, G48420, G48820

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:12](#); [2:14](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), [house](#), [lord](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:16](#); [2:18](#))

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, [false god](#), [humble](#), Isaiah, worship)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:6](#); [3:16](#); [4:14](#); [4:16](#))

## shepherd, herder, pastor

### Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: [sheep](#), livestock, pastor)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to



- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2 General Notes](#); [2:25](#); [5:2](#); [5:4](#))

# silver

## Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:18](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:20](#); [2:22](#); [2:24](#); [3:18](#); [4:1](#); [4:8](#); [4:18](#))

## slander, slanderers, revile, insult

### Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: blasphemy)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:13
- 1 Timothy 3:11
- 2 Corinthians 6:8-10
- Mark 7:20-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G09870, G09880, G12280, G14260, G26360, G26370, G30590, G30600

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:1](#); [4:4](#))

## soldier, warrior

### Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: courage, crucify, Rome, tomb)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:5
- Acts 21:33
- Luke 3:14
- Luke 23:11
- Matthew 8:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H0510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H4421, H5971, H6518, H6635, H7273, H7916, G46860, G47530, G47540, G47570, G47580, G49610

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:11](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: descendant, ancestor, Son of God, sons of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:13](#))



## soul, self, person

### Definition:

The term “soul” can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the “soul” can be spoken of as the part of a person that “relates to God.”
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means “I am tired.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:9](#); [1:22](#); [2:11](#); [2:25](#); [3:20](#); [4:19](#))

## spirit, wind, breath

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: [soul](#), [Holy Spirit](#), demon, breath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:5](#); [3:4](#); [3:18](#); [3:19](#); [4:6](#))

## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, [right hand](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,  
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:11](#); [5:10](#))

## stumble, reeling

### Definition:

The term “stumble” means “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to “stumble” can mean to “sin” or to “falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

### Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: [believe](#), persecute, [sin](#), [stumbling block](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 2:8
- Hosea 4:5
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G06790, G43480, G43500, G44170, G46240, G46250

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:8](#))

## stumbling block, stone of stumbling

### Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See also: [stumble](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:23
- Galatians 5:11
- Matthew 5:29-30
- Matthew 16:23
- Romans 9:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4383, G30370, G43490, G46250

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:8](#))

## subject, be subject to, subjection

### Facts:

A person is the “subject” of another person if the second person rules over the first. To “be subject to” is to “obey” or to “submit to the authority of.”

- The phrase “put in subjection to” refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To “subject someone to something” means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term “subject” is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, “you will be the subject of ridicule.”
- The phrase “be subject to” means the same as “be submissive to” or “submit to.”

(See also: [submit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:14-16
- 1 Kings 4:6
- 1 Peter 2:18-20
- Hebrews 2:5
- Proverbs 12:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H3533, H3665, H4522, H5647, H5927, G03500, G13790, G13960, G17770, G36630, G52920, G52930

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:13](#); [2:18](#); [3:5](#); [3:22](#))



## submit, submission, in submission

### Definition:

To “submit” usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to “submit to one another” means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To “live in submission to” means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The command “submit to” could be translated as “put yourself under the authority of” or “follow the leadership of” or “humbly honor and respect”
- The term “submission” could be translated as “obedience” or “the following of authority.”
- The phrase “live in submission to” could be translated as “be obedient to” or “put oneself under the authority of.”
- The phrase “be in submission” could be translated as “humbly accept authority.”

(See also: [subject](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 3:1
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3584, G52260, G52930

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:1](#); [5:5](#))

## suffer, suffering

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:3** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:7** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:4** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:11](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [2:23](#); [3:14](#); [3:17](#); [4:1](#); [4:13](#); [4:15](#); [4:19](#); [5:1](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#))

## terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

### Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme or intense fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), plague, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 2:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:9
- Mark 6:48-50

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H0928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G16290, G16300, G22580, G44220, G44260, G54010

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:6](#))

## test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

### Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:7](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:11](#); [5:1](#); [5:12](#))

## thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits

### Facts:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: [bless](#), crime, crucify, [darkness](#), destroyer, [power](#), Samaria, [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 6:30
- Revelation 3:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G07270, G24170, G28120, G30270

(Go back to: [1 Peter 4:15](#))



## time, untimely, date

### Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: age, tribulation)

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:7
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 8:29
- Psalms 68:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0116, H0227, H0310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G07440, G05300, G10740, G12080, G14410, G15970, G16260, G19090, G20340, G21190, G21210, G22350, G22500, G25400, G34610, G35680, G37640, G38190, G39560, G39990, G41780, G41810, G41830, G42180, G42870, G43400, G44550, G51190, G51510, G53050, G55500, G55510, G56100

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:5](#); [1:11](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:17](#); [5:6](#))

## to minister, ministry

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:12](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#))

## tongue, language

### Definition:

The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:10](#))

## torment, tormented, tormentors

### Facts:

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering may also take the form of spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: [beast](#), [everlasting](#), [Job](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [suffer](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 1:11-12
- Luke 8:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3013, G09280, G09290, G09300, G09310, G25580, G28510, G36000

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:20](#))

## trial, proving

### Definition:

The term “trial” refers to a situation in which something or someone is “tried” or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term “trial” can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is “a testing” or “a temptation” is one particular type of trial.
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: tempt, [test](#), innocent, guilt)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Lamentations 3:58-61
- Proverbs 25:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0974, H4531, H4941, H7378, G01780, G13830, G29190, G39860

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:6](#); [4:12](#))

## trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

### Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:14](#))

## true, truth

### Definition:

The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- “True” things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- “Truth” means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of “truth” includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:22](#); [5:12](#))



## turn, turn away, turn back, return

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”
- To “turn aside” means to change direction, it often means to either stop doing right and start doing evil or the opposite.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake. It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [false god](#), leprosy, worship)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:2
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 1:17
- Malachi 4:6
- Revelation 11:6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G03440, G03870, G04020, G06540, G06650, G08680, G12940, G15780, G16120, G16240, G19940, G31790, G33130, G33290, G33440, G33460, G47620, G51570, G52900

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:25](#); [3:11](#))

## understand, understanding, thinking

### Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), wise)

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:7](#))

## vain, vanity

### Definition:

The terms “vain” and “vanity” describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as “vain” things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done “in vain,” it means that there the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase “in vain” might be translated in various ways, including: “without result;” “with no result;” “for no reason;” “for no purpose,” or “with no purpose.”
- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty,” “useless,” “hopeless,” “worthless,” “meaningless,” etc.

(See also: [false god](#), worthy)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 2:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 2:29-31
- Matthew 15:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G09450, G15000, G27560, G27580, G27610, G31510, G31520, G31530, G31550

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:18](#))

## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:8](#))

## watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [1 Peter 5:8](#))

## water, deep

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The “deep” refers to a deep body of water, such as the watery depths at the beginning of creation or bodies of water that extend deep under the earth’s surface such as oceans, seas, etc.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 4:10
- John 4:14
- John 4:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, H8415, G05040, G42150, G42220, G52020, G52040

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:20](#))

## will of God

### Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:15](#); [3:17](#); [4:2](#); [4:19](#))



## word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7

- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:23](#); [1:25](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [3:1](#))

## work, works, deeds

### Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: fruit, [Holy Spirit](#), miracle)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:17](#); [2:12](#))

## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, [heaven](#), Rome, [godly](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G10930, G28860, G28890, G36250

(Go back to: [1 Peter 1:20](#); [5:9](#))

## zeal, zealous

### Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3
- Galatians 4:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 2:17-19
- Philippians 3:6
- Romans 10:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G22050, G22060, G22070, G60410

(Go back to: [1 Peter 3:13](#))

## Zion, Mount Zion

### Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), David, Jerusalem, Bethlehem, Jebusites)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [1 Peter 2:6](#))

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman



Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Scott Bayer  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Dan Dennison  
Jamie Duguid  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris  
 C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
 Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
 Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
 John Huffman  
 D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
 Jack Messarra  
 Gene Mullen  
 Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
 Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
 Kristy Nickell  
 Tom Nickell  
 Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
 Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
 James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
 Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
 Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
 Dean Ropp  
 Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
 Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
 Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
 Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary  
 Leonard Smith  
 Suzanna Smith  
 Tim Span  
 Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
 Maria Tijerina  
 David Trombold, M. Div.  
 Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary  
 James Vigen  
 Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
 Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
 Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
 Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
 Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
 Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
 Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
 Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
 Matt Carlton  
 George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
 Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
 Michael Francis  
 Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
 Kailey Gregory  
 Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
 C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
 Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
 Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
 John Huffman  
 D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
 Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College  
Leonard Smith  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors**

Door43 World Missions Community  
Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)  
Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)  
Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)  
Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)